

# **Linux From Scratch**

## **Version 7.5-systemd-rc1**

**Created by Gerard Beekmans**  
**Edited by Matthew Burgess and Bruce Dubbs**

# **Linux From Scratch: Version 7.5-systemd-rc1**

by Created by Gerard Beekmans and Edited by Matthew Burgess and Bruce Dubbs

Copyright © 1999-2014 Gerard Beekmans

Copyright © 1999-2014, Gerard Beekmans

All rights reserved.

This book is licensed under a Creative Commons License.

Computer instructions may be extracted from the book under the MIT License.

Linux® is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

# Table of Contents

Preface .....	vii
i. Foreword .....	vii
ii. Audience .....	vii
iii. LFS Target Architectures .....	viii
iv. LFS and Standards .....	ix
v. Rationale for Packages in the Book .....	x
vi. Prerequisites .....	xv
vii. Host System Requirements .....	xvi
viii. Typography .....	xviii
ix. Structure .....	xix
x. Errata .....	xix
I. Introduction .....	1
1. Introduction .....	2
1.1. How to Build an LFS System .....	2
1.2. What's new since the last release .....	2
1.3. Changelog .....	3
1.4. Resources .....	7
1.5. Help .....	8
II. Preparing for the Build .....	10
2. Preparing a New Partition .....	11
2.1. Introduction .....	11
2.2. Creating a New Partition .....	11
2.3. Creating a File System on the Partition .....	12
2.4. Mounting the New Partition .....	13
3. Packages and Patches .....	14
3.1. Introduction .....	14
3.2. All Packages .....	14
3.3. Needed Patches .....	21
4. Final Preparations .....	23
4.1. About \$LFS .....	23
4.2. Creating the \$LFS/tools Directory .....	23
4.3. Adding the LFS User .....	24
4.4. Setting Up the Environment .....	24
4.5. About SBUs .....	26
4.6. About the Test Suites .....	26
5. Constructing a Temporary System .....	28
5.1. Introduction .....	28
5.2. Toolchain Technical Notes .....	28
5.3. General Compilation Instructions .....	30
5.4. Binutils-2.24 - Pass 1 .....	31
5.5. GCC-4.8.2 - Pass 1 .....	33
5.6. Linux-3.13.3 API Headers .....	36
5.7. Glibc-2.19 .....	37
5.8. Libstdc++-4.8.2 .....	40
5.9. Binutils-2.24 - Pass 2 .....	42

5.10. GCC-4.8.2 - Pass 2 .....	44
5.11. Tcl-8.6.1 .....	47
5.12. Expect-5.45 .....	49
5.13. DejaGNU-1.5.1 .....	51
5.14. Check-0.9.12 .....	52
5.15. Ncurses-5.9 .....	53
5.16. Bash-4.2 .....	54
5.17. Bzip2-1.0.6 .....	55
5.18. Coreutils-8.22 .....	56
5.19. Diffutils-3.3 .....	57
5.20. File-5.17 .....	58
5.21. Findutils-4.4.2 .....	59
5.22. Gawk-4.1.0 .....	60
5.23. Gettext-0.18.3.2 .....	61
5.24. Grep-2.16 .....	62
5.25. Gzip-1.6 .....	63
5.26. M4-1.4.17 .....	64
5.27. Make-4.0 .....	65
5.28. Patch-2.7.1 .....	66
5.29. Perl-5.18.2 .....	67
5.30. Sed-4.2.2 .....	68
5.31. Tar-1.27.1 .....	69
5.32. Texinfo-5.2 .....	70
5.33. Util-linux-2.24.1 .....	71
5.34. Xz-5.0.5 .....	72
5.35. Stripping .....	73
5.36. Changing Ownership .....	73
III. Building the LFS System .....	74
6. Installing Basic System Software .....	75
6.1. Introduction .....	75
6.2. Preparing Virtual Kernel File Systems .....	75
6.3. Package Management .....	76
6.4. Entering the Chroot Environment .....	79
6.5. Creating Directories .....	80
6.6. Creating Essential Files and Symlinks .....	81
6.7. Linux-3.13.3 API Headers .....	84
6.8. Man-pages-3.59 .....	85
6.9. Glibc-2.19 .....	86
6.10. Adjusting the Toolchain .....	93
6.11. Zlib-1.2.8 .....	95
6.12. File-5.17 .....	96
6.13. Binutils-2.24 .....	97
6.14. GMP-5.1.3 .....	99
6.15. MPFR-3.1.2 .....	101
6.16. MPC-1.0.2 .....	102
6.17. GCC-4.8.2 .....	103
6.18. Sed-4.2.2 .....	108

6.19. Bzip2-1.0.6 .....	109
6.20. Pkg-config-0.28 .....	111
6.21. Ncurses-5.9 .....	112
6.22. Attr-2.4.47 .....	115
6.23. Acl-2.2.52 .....	116
6.24. Libcap-2.24 .....	118
6.25. Shadow-4.1.5.1 .....	119
6.26. Psmisc-22.20 .....	122
6.27. Procps-ng-3.3.9 .....	123
6.28. E2fsprogs-1.42.9 .....	125
6.29. Coreutils-8.22 .....	128
6.30. Iana-Etc-2.30 .....	133
6.31. M4-1.4.17 .....	134
6.32. Flex-2.5.38 .....	135
6.33. Bison-3.0.2 .....	137
6.34. Grep-2.16 .....	138
6.35. Readline-6.2 .....	139
6.36. Bash-4.2 .....	141
6.37. Bc-1.06.95 .....	143
6.38. Libtool-2.4.2 .....	144
6.39. GDBM-1.11 .....	145
6.40. Expat-2.1.0 .....	146
6.41. Inetutils-1.9.2 .....	147
6.42. Perl-5.18.2 .....	149
6.43. XML::Parser-2.42_01 .....	152
6.44. Autoconf-2.69 .....	153
6.45. Automake-1.14.1 .....	154
6.46. Diffutils-3.3 .....	156
6.47. Gawk-4.1.0 .....	157
6.48. Findutils-4.4.2 .....	158
6.49. Gettext-0.18.3.2 .....	159
6.50. Intltool-0.50.2 .....	161
6.51. Gperf-3.0.4 .....	162
6.52. Groff-1.22.2 .....	163
6.53. Xz-5.0.5 .....	166
6.54. GRUB-2.00 .....	168
6.55. Less-458 .....	170
6.56. Gzip-1.6 .....	171
6.57. IPRoute2-3.12.0 .....	173
6.58. Kbd-2.0.1 .....	175
6.59. Kmod-16 .....	177
6.60. Libpipeline-1.2.6 .....	179
6.61. Make-4.0 .....	180
6.62. Patch-2.7.1 .....	181
6.63. Libdbus-1.8.0 .....	182
6.64. Systemd-208 .....	183
6.65. D-Bus-1.8.0 .....	187

6.66. Util-linux-2.24.1 .....	189
6.67. Man-DB-2.6.6 .....	194
6.68. Tar-1.27.1 .....	197
6.69. Texinfo-5.2 .....	198
6.70. Vim-7.4 .....	200
6.71. About Debugging Symbols .....	203
6.72. Stripping Again .....	203
6.73. Cleaning Up .....	204
7. Basic System Configuration .....	205
7.1. Introduction .....	205
7.2. LFS-Network-Scripts-20140214 .....	206
7.3. General Network Configuration .....	207
7.4. Customizing the /etc/hosts File .....	208
7.5. Device and Module Handling on an LFS System .....	209
7.6. Creating Custom Symlinks to Devices .....	213
7.7. Configuring the system hostname .....	213
7.8. Configuring the system clock .....	213
7.9. Configuring the Linux Console .....	214
7.10. Configuring the System Locale .....	215
7.11. Creating the /etc/inputrc File .....	217
8. Making the LFS System Bootable .....	219
8.1. Introduction .....	219
8.2. Creating the /etc/fstab File .....	219
8.3. Linux-3.13.3 .....	221
8.4. Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process .....	225
9. The End .....	227
9.1. The End .....	227
9.2. Get Counted .....	227
9.3. Rebooting the System .....	227
9.4. What Now? .....	229
IV. Appendices .....	230
A. Acronyms and Terms .....	231
B. Acknowledgments .....	234
C. Dependencies .....	237
D. LFS Licenses .....	247
D.1. Creative Commons License .....	247
D.2. The MIT License .....	251
Index .....	252

# Preface

## Foreword

My journey to learn and better understand Linux began over a decade ago, back in 1998. I had just installed my first Linux distribution and had quickly become intrigued with the whole concept and philosophy behind Linux.

There are always many ways to accomplish a single task. The same can be said about Linux distributions. A great many have existed over the years. Some still exist, some have morphed into something else, yet others have been relegated to our memories. They all do things differently to suit the needs of their target audience. Because so many different ways to accomplish the same end goal exist, I began to realize I no longer had to be limited by any one implementation. Prior to discovering Linux, we simply put up with issues in other Operating Systems as you had no choice. It was what it was, whether you liked it or not. With Linux, the concept of choice began to emerge. If you didn't like something, you were free, even encouraged, to change it.

I tried a number of distributions and could not decide on any one. They were great systems in their own right. It wasn't a matter of right and wrong anymore. It had become a matter of personal taste. With all that choice available, it became apparent that there would not be a single system that would be perfect for me. So I set out to create my own Linux system that would fully conform to my personal preferences.

To truly make it my own system, I resolved to compile everything from source code instead of using pre-compiled binary packages. This “perfect” Linux system would have the strengths of various systems without their perceived weaknesses. At first, the idea was rather daunting. I remained committed to the idea that such a system could be built.

After sorting through issues such as circular dependencies and compile-time errors, I finally built a custom-built Linux system. It was fully operational and perfectly usable like any of the other Linux systems out there at the time. But it was my own creation. It was very satisfying to have put together such a system myself. The only thing better would have been to create each piece of software myself. This was the next best thing.

As I shared my goals and experiences with other members of the Linux community, it became apparent that there was a sustained interest in these ideas. It quickly became plain that such custom-built Linux systems serve not only to meet user specific requirements, but also serve as an ideal learning opportunity for programmers and system administrators to enhance their (existing) Linux skills. Out of this broadened interest, the *Linux From Scratch Project* was born.

This Linux From Scratch book is the central core around that project. It provides the background and instructions necessary for you to design and build your own system. While this book provides a template that will result in a correctly working system, you are free to alter the instructions to suit yourself, which is, in part, an important part of this project. You remain in control; we just lend a helping hand to get you started on your own journey.

I sincerely hope you will have a great time working on your own Linux From Scratch system and enjoy the numerous benefits of having a system that is truly your own.

--  
Gerard Beekmans  
gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

## Audience

There are many reasons why you would want to read this book. One of the questions many people raise is, “why go through all the hassle of manually building a Linux system from scratch when you can just download and install an existing one?”

One important reason for this project's existence is to help you learn how a Linux system works from the inside out. Building an LFS system helps demonstrate what makes Linux tick, and how things work together and depend on each other. One of the best things that this learning experience can provide is the ability to customize a Linux system to suit your own unique needs.

Another key benefit of LFS is that it allows you to have more control over the system without relying on someone else's Linux implementation. With LFS, you are in the driver's seat and dictate every aspect of the system.

LFS allows you to create very compact Linux systems. When installing regular distributions, you are often forced to install a great many programs which are probably never used or understood. These programs waste resources. You may argue that with today's hard drive and CPUs, such resources are no longer a consideration. Sometimes, however, you are still constrained by size considerations if nothing else. Think about bootable CDs, USB sticks, and embedded systems. Those are areas where LFS can be beneficial.

Another advantage of a custom built Linux system is security. By compiling the entire system from source code, you are empowered to audit everything and apply all the security patches desired. It is no longer necessary to wait for somebody else to compile binary packages that fix a security hole. Unless you examine the patch and implement it yourself, you have no guarantee that the new binary package was built correctly and adequately fixes the problem.

The goal of Linux From Scratch is to build a complete and usable foundation-level system. If you do not wish to build your own Linux system from scratch, you may not entirely benefit from the information in this book.

There are too many other good reasons to build your own LFS system to list them all here. In the end, education is by far the most powerful of reasons. As you continue in your LFS experience, you will discover the power that information and knowledge truly bring.

## LFS Target Architectures

The primary target architectures of LFS are the AMD/Intel x86 (32-bit) and x86\_64 (64-bit) CPUs. On the other hand, the instructions in this book are also known to work, with some modifications, with the Power PC CPU. To build a system that utilizes one of these CPUs, the main prerequisite, in addition to those on the next few pages, is an existing Linux system such as an earlier LFS installation, Ubuntu, Red Hat/Fedora, SuSE, or other distribution that targets the architecture that you have. Also note that a 32-bit distribution can be installed and used as a host system on a 64-bit AMD/Intel computer.

Some other facts about 64-bit systems need to be added here. When compared to a 32-bit system, the sizes of executable programs are slightly larger and the execution speeds are only slightly faster. For example, in a test build of LFS-6.5 on a Core2Duo CPU based system, the following statistics were measured:

Architecture	Build Time	Build Size
32-bit	198.5 minutes	648 MB
64-bit	190.6 minutes	709 MB

As you can see, the 64-bit build is only 4% faster and is 9% larger than the 32-bit build. The gain from going to a 64-bit system is relatively minimal. Of course, if you have more than 4GB of RAM or want to manipulate data that exceeds 4GB, the advantages of a 64-bit system are substantial.

The default 64-bit build that results from LFS is considered a "pure" 64-bit system. That is, it supports 64-bit executables only. Building a "multi-lib" system requires compiling many applications twice, once for a 32-bit system and once for a 64-bit system. This is not directly supported in LFS because it would interfere with the educational objective of providing the instructions needed for a straightforward base Linux system. You can refer to the *Cross Linux From Scratch* project for this advanced topic.



There is one last comment about 64-bit systems. There are some older packages that cannot currently be built in a "pure" 64-bit system or require specialized build instructions. Generally, these packages have some embedded 32-bit specific assembly language instructions that fail when building on a 64-bit system. This includes some Xorg drivers for some legacy video cards at <http://xorg.freedesktop.org/releases/individual/driver/>. Many of these problems can be worked around, but may require some specialized procedures or patches.

## LFS and Standards

The structure of LFS follows Linux standards as closely as possible. The primary standards are:

- *POSIX.1-2008*.
- *Filesystem Hierarchy Standard version 3.0 Draft 1 (FHS)*
- *Linux Standard Base (LSB) Specifications*

The LSB has five separate standards: Core, C++, Desktop, Runtime Languages, and Printing. In addition to generic requirements there are also architecture specific requirements. LFS attempts to conform to the architectures discussed in the previous section.



### Note

Many people do not agree with the requirements of the LSB. The main purpose of defining it is to ensure that proprietary software will be able to be installed and run properly on a compliant system. Since LFS is source based, the user has complete control over what packages are desired and many choose not to install some packages that are specified by the LSB.

Creating a complete LFS system capable of passing the LSB certifications tests is possible, but not without many additional packages that are beyond the scope of LFS. These additional packages have installation instructions in BLFS.

## Packages supplied by LFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements

<i>LSB Core:</i>	Bash, Bc, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, File, Findutils, Gawk, Grep, Gzip, M4, Mandb, Ncurses, Procs, Psmisc, Sed, Shadow, Tar, Util-linux, Zlib
<i>LSB C++:</i>	Gcc
<i>LSB Desktop:</i>	None
<i>LSB Runtime Languages:</i>	Perl
<i>LSB Printing:</i>	None
<i>LSB Multimedea:</i>	None

## Packages supplied by BLFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements

<i>LSB Core:</i>	At, Batch (a part of At), Cpio, Ed, Fcfrontab, Initd-tools, Lsb_release, PAM, Sendmail (or Postfix or Exim)
<i>LSB C++:</i>	None
<i>LSB Desktop:</i>	ATK, Cairo, Desktop-file-utils, Freetype, Fontconfig, Glib2, GTK+2, Icon-naming-utils, Libjpeg, Libpng, Libxml2, MesaLib, Pango, Qt4, Xorg

<i>LSB Runtime Languages:</i>	Python
<i>LSB Printing:</i>	CUPS
<i>LSB Multimedea:</i>	Alsa Libraries, NSPR, NSS, OpenSSL, Java, Xdg-utils

## Packages not supplied by LFS or BLFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements

<i>LSB Core:</i>	None
<i>LSB C++:</i>	None
<i>LSB Desktop:</i>	Qt3
<i>LSB Runtime Languages:</i>	None
<i>LSB Printing:</i>	None
<i>LSB Multimedea:</i>	None

## Rationale for Packages in the Book

As stated earlier, the goal of LFS is to build a complete and usable foundation-level system. This includes all packages needed to replicate itself while providing a relatively minimal base from which to customize a more complete system based on the choices of the user. This does not mean that LFS is the smallest system possible. Several important packages are included that are not strictly required. The lists below document the rationale for each package in the book.

- Acl
 

This package contains programs to administer Access Control Lists, which are used to define more fine-grained discretionary access rights for files and directories. It is required by Systemd and can be used by Coreutils.
- Attr
 

This package contains programs for working with extended attributes on filesystem objects. It is required by the libcap library.
- Autoconf
 

This package contains programs for producing shell scripts that can automatically configure source code from a developer's template. It is often needed to rebuild a package after updates to the build procedures.
- Automake
 

This package contains programs for generating Make files from a template. It is often needed to rebuild a package after updates to the build procedures.
- Bash
 

This package satisfies an LSB core requirement to provide a Bourne Shell interface to the system. It was chosen over other shell packages because of its common usage and extensive capabilities beyond basic shell functions.
- Bc
 

This package provides an arbitrary precision numeric processing language. It satisfies a requirement needed when building the Linux kernel.
- Binutils

This package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files. The programs in this package are needed to compile most of the packages in an LFS system and beyond.

- Bison

This package contains the GNU version of yacc (Yet Another Compiler Compiler) needed to build several other LFS programs.

- Bzip2

This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It is required to decompress many LFS packages.

- Check

This package contains a test harness for other programs. It is only installed in the temporary toolchain.

- Coreutils

This package contains a number of essential programs for viewing and manipulating files and directories. These programs are needed for command line file management, and are necessary for the installation procedures of every package in LFS.

- D-Bus

D-Bus is a message bus system, a simple way for applications to communicate with one another; it is required by Systemd.

- DejaGNU

This package contains a framework for testing other programs. It is only installed in the temporary toolchain.

- Diffutils

This package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories. These programs can be used to create patches, and are also used in many packages' build procedures.

- E2fsprogs

This package contains the utilities for handling the ext2, ext3 and ext4 file systems. These are the most common and thoroughly tested file systems that Linux supports.

- Expat

This package contains a relatively small XML parsing library. It is required by the XML::Parser Perl module.

- Expect

This package contains a program for carrying out scripted dialogues with other interactive programs. It is commonly used for testing other packages. It is only installed in the temporary toolchain.

- File

This package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files. A few packages need it to build.

- Findutils

This package contains programs to find files in a file system. It is used in many packages' build scripts.

- Flex

This package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text. It is the GNU version of the `lex` (lexical analyzer) program. It is required to build several LFS packages.

- **Gawk**

This package contains programs for manipulating text files. It is the GNU version of `awk` (Aho-Weinberg-Kernighan). It is used in many other packages' build scripts.

- **Gcc**

This package is the Gnu Compiler Collection. It contains the C and C++ compilers as well as several others not built by LFS.

- **GDBM**

This package contains the GNU Database Manager library. It is used by one other LFS package, `Man-DB`.

- **Gettext**

This package contains utilities and libraries for internationalization and localization of numerous packages.

- **Glibc**

This package contains the main C library. Linux programs would not run without it.

- **GMP**

This package contains math libraries that provide useful functions for arbitrary precision arithmetic. It is required to build `Gcc`.

- **Gperf**

This package generates a perfect hash from a key set; it is required by `Systemd`.

- **Grep**

This package contains programs for searching through files. These programs are used by most packages' build scripts.

- **Groff**

This package contains programs for processing and formatting text. One important function of these programs is to format man pages.

- **GRUB**

This package is the Grand Unified Boot Loader. It is one of several boot loaders available, but is the most flexible.

- **Gzip**

This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It is needed to decompress many packages in LFS and beyond.

- **Iana-etc**

This package provides data for network services and protocols. It is needed to enable proper networking capabilities.

- **Inetutils**

This package contains programs for basic network administration.

- **Intltool**

This package contains internationalization tools; it is required by Systemd.

- IProute2

This package contains programs for basic and advanced IPv4 and IPv6 networking. It was chosen over the other common network tools package (net-tools) for its IPv6 capabilities.

- Kbd

This package contains key-table files, keyboard utilities for non-US keyboards, and a number of console fonts.

- Kmod

This package contains programs needed to administer Linux kernel modules.

- Less

This package contains a very nice text file viewer that allows scrolling up or down when viewing a file. It is also used by Man-DB for viewing manpages.

- Libcap

This package contains functions that enable root privileges to be partitioned into a set of distinct privileges. It is required by Systemd.

- Libpipeline

The Libpipeline package contains a library for manipulating pipelines of subprocesses in a flexible and convenient way. It is required by the Man-DB package.

- Libtool

This package contains the GNU generic library support script. It wraps the complexity of using shared libraries in a consistent, portable interface. It is needed by the test suites in other LFS packages.

- Linux Kernel

This package is the Operating System. It is the Linux in the GNU/Linux environment.

- M4

This package contains a general text macro processor useful as a build tool for other programs.

- Make

This package contains a program for directing the building of packages. It is required by almost every package in LFS.

- Man-DB

This package contains programs for finding and viewing man pages. It was chosen instead of the man package due to superior internationalization capabilities. It supplies the man program.

- Man-pages

This package contains the actual contents of the basic Linux man pages.

- MPC

This package contains functions for the arithmetic of complex numbers. It is required by Gcc.

- MPFR

This package contains functions for multiple precision arithmetic. It is required by Gcc.

- Ncurses

This package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens. It is often used to provide cursor control for a menuing system. It is needed by a number of packages in LFS.

- Patch

This package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a *patch* file typically created by the diff program. It is needed by the build procedure for several LFS packages.

- Perl

This package is an interpreter for the runtime language PERL. It is needed for the installation and test suites of several LFS packages.

- Pkg-config

This package provides a program to return meta-data about an installed library or package.

- Procps-NG

This package contains programs for monitoring processes. These programs are useful for system administration, and are also used by the LFS Bootscripts.

- Psmisc

This package contains programs for displaying information about running processes. These programs are useful for system administration.

- Readline

This package is a set of libraries that offers command-line editing and history capabilities. It is used by Bash.

- Sed

This package allows editing of text without opening it in a text editor. It is also needed by most LFS packages' configure scripts.

- Shadow

This package contains programs for handling passwords in a secure way.

- Systemd

This package contains programs for controlling the startup, running, and shutdown of the system.

- Sysvinit

This package provides misc. utils needed by some packages.

- Tar

This package provides archiving and extraction capabilities of virtually all packages used in LFS.

- Tcl

This package contains the Tool Command Language used in many test suites in LFS packages. It is only installed in the temporary toolchain.

- Texinfo

This package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages. It is used in the installation procedures of many LFS packages.

- Util-linux

This package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

- Vim

This package contains an editor. It was chosen because of its compatibility with the classic vi editor and its huge number of powerful capabilities. An editor is a very personal choice for many users and any other editor could be substituted if desired.

- XML::Parser

This package contains an XML Parsing library for Perl. It is required by the Intltool package.

- XZ Utils

This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides the highest compression generally available and is useful for decompressing packages XZ or LZMA format.

- Zlib

This package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs.

## Prerequisites

Building an LFS system is not a simple task. It requires a certain level of existing knowledge of Unix system administration in order to resolve problems and correctly execute the commands listed. In particular, as an absolute minimum, you should already have the ability to use the command line (shell) to copy or move files and directories, list directory and file contents, and change the current directory. It is also expected that you have a reasonable knowledge of using and installing Linux software.

Because the LFS book assumes *at least* this basic level of skill, the various LFS support forums are unlikely to be able to provide you with much assistance in these areas. You will find that your questions regarding such basic knowledge will likely go unanswered or you will simply be referred to the LFS essential pre-reading list.

Before building an LFS system, we recommend reading the following HOWTOs:

- Software-Building-HOWTO <http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/Software-Building-HOWTO.html>

This is a comprehensive guide to building and installing “generic” Unix software packages under Linux. Although it was written some time ago, it still provides a good summary of the basic techniques needed to build and install software.

- The Linux Users' Guide <http://tldp.org/pub/Linux/docs/ldp-archived/users-guide/>

This guide covers the usage of assorted Linux software. This reference is also fairly old, but still valid.

- The Essential Pre-Reading Hint [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/essential\\_prereading.txt](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/essential_prereading.txt)

This is an LFS Hint written specifically for users new to Linux. It includes a list of links to excellent sources of information on a wide range of topics. Anyone attempting to install LFS should have an understanding of many of the topics in this hint.

## Host System Requirements

Your host system should have the following software with the minimum versions indicated. This should not be an issue for most modern Linux distributions. Also note that many distributions will place software headers into separate packages, often in the form of “<package-name>-devel” or “<package-name>-dev”. Be sure to install those if your distribution provides them.

Earlier versions of the listed software packages may work, but has not been tested.

- **Bash-3.2** (/bin/sh should be a symbolic or hard link to bash)
- **Binutils-2.17** (Versions greater than 2.24 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Bison-2.3** (/usr/bin/yacc should be a link to bison or small script that executes bison)
- **Bzip2-1.0.4**
- **Coreutils-6.9**
- **Diffutils-2.8.1**
- **Findutils-4.2.31**
- **Gawk-4.0.1** (/usr/bin/awk should be a link to gawk)
- **GCC-4.1.2** including the C++ compiler, **g++** (Versions greater than 4.8.2 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Glibc-2.5.1** (Versions greater than 2.19 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Grep-2.5.1a**
- **Gzip-1.3.12**
- **Linux Kernel-2.6.32**

The reason for the kernel version requirement is that we specify that version when building glibc in Chapter 6 at the recommendation of the developers. It is also required by udev.

If the host kernel is earlier than 2.6.32 you will need to replace the kernel with a more up to date version. There are two ways you can go about this. First, see if your Linux vendor provides a 2.6.32 or later kernel package. If so, you may wish to install it. If your vendor doesn't offer an acceptable kernel package, or you would prefer not to install it, you can compile a kernel yourself. Instructions for compiling the kernel and configuring the boot loader (assuming the host uses GRUB) are located in Chapter 8.

- **M4-1.4.10**
- **Make-3.81**
- **Patch-2.5.4**
- **Perl-5.8.8**
- **Sed-4.1.5**
- **Tar-1.18**
- **Xz-5.0.0**

Note that the symlinks mentioned above are required to build an LFS system using the instructions contained within this book. Symlinks that point to other software (such as dash, mawk, etc.) may work, but are not tested or supported by the LFS development team, and may require either deviation from the instructions or additional patches to some packages.



To see whether your host system has all the appropriate versions, and the ability to compile programs, run the following:

```

cat > version-check.sh << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash
# Simple script to list version numbers of critical development tools

export LC_ALL=C
bash --version | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f2-4
echo "/bin/sh -> `readlink -f /bin/sh`"
echo -n "Binutils: "; ld --version | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f3-
bison --version | head -n1
if [ -e /usr/bin/yacc ];
  then echo "/usr/bin/yacc -> `readlink -f /usr/bin/yacc`";
  else echo "yacc not found"; fi

bzip2 --version 2>&1 < /dev/null | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f1,6-
echo -n "Coreutils: "; chown --version | head -n1 | cut -d")" -f2
diff --version | head -n1
find --version | head -n1
gawk --version | head -n1
if [ -e /usr/bin/awk ];
  then echo "/usr/bin/awk -> `readlink -f /usr/bin/awk`";
  else echo "awk not found"; fi

gcc --version | head -n1
g++ --version | head -n1
ldd --version | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f2- # glibc version
grep --version | head -n1
gzip --version | head -n1
cat /proc/version
m4 --version | head -n1
make --version | head -n1
patch --version | head -n1
echo Perl `perl -V:version`
sed --version | head -n1
tar --version | head -n1
xz --version | head -n1

echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c && g++ -o dummy dummy.c
if [ -x dummy ]
  then echo "g++ compilation OK";
  else echo "g++ compilation failed"; fi
rm -f dummy.c dummy
EOF

bash version-check.sh

```

## Typography

To make things easier to follow, there are a few typographical conventions used throughout this book. This section contains some examples of the typographical format found throughout Linux From Scratch.

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

This form of text is designed to be typed exactly as seen unless otherwise noted in the surrounding text. It is also used in the explanation sections to identify which of the commands is being referenced.

In some cases, a logical line is extended to two or more physical lines with a backslash at the end of the line.

```
CC="gcc -B/usr/bin/" ../binutils-2.18/configure \  
--prefix=/tools --disable-nls --disable-werror
```

Note that the backslash must be followed by an immediate return. Other whitespace characters like spaces or tab characters will create incorrect results.

```
install-info: unknown option '--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
```

This form of text (fixed-width text) shows screen output, usually as the result of commands issued. This format is also used to show filenames, such as `/etc/ld.so.conf`.

### *Emphasis*

This form of text is used for several purposes in the book. Its main purpose is to emphasize important points or items.

*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/>*

This format is used for hyperlinks both within the LFS community and to external pages. It includes HOWTOs, download locations, and websites.

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"  
root:x:0:  
bin:x:1:  
.....  
EOF
```

This format is used when creating configuration files. The first command tells the system to create the file `$LFS/etc/group` from whatever is typed on the following lines until the sequence End Of File (EOF) is encountered. Therefore, this entire section is generally typed as seen.

*<REPLACED TEXT>*

This format is used to encapsulate text that is not to be typed as seen or for copy-and-paste operations.

*[OPTIONAL TEXT]*

This format is used to encapsulate text that is optional.

`passwd(5)`

This format is used to refer to a specific manual (man) page. The number inside parentheses indicates a specific section inside the manuals. For example, **passwd** has two man pages. Per LFS installation instructions, those two man pages will be located at `/usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1` and `/usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5`. When the book uses `passwd(5)` it is specifically referring to `/usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5`. **man passwd** will print

the first man page it finds that matches “passwd”, which will be `/usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1`. For this example, you will need to run **man 5 passwd** in order to read the specific page being referred to. It should be noted that most man pages do not have duplicate page names in different sections. Therefore, **man <program name>** is generally sufficient.

## Structure

This book is divided into the following parts.

### Part I - Introduction

Part I explains a few important notes on how to proceed with the LFS installation. This section also provides meta-information about the book.

### Part II - Preparing for the Build

Part II describes how to prepare for the building process—making a partition, downloading the packages, and compiling temporary tools.

### Part III - Building the LFS System

Part III guides the reader through the building of the LFS system—compiling and installing all the packages one by one, setting up the boot scripts, and installing the kernel. The resulting Linux system is the foundation on which other software can be built to expand the system as desired. At the end of this book, there is an easy to use reference listing all of the programs, libraries, and important files that have been installed.

## Errata

The software used to create an LFS system is constantly being updated and enhanced. Security warnings and bug fixes may become available after the LFS book has been released. To check whether the package versions or instructions in this release of LFS need any modifications to accommodate security vulnerabilities or other bug fixes, please visit <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/errata/7.5-systemd-rc1/> before proceeding with your build. You should note any changes shown and apply them to the relevant section of the book as you progress with building the LFS system.

# Part I. Introduction

# Chapter 1. Introduction

## 1.1. How to Build an LFS System

The LFS system will be built by using an already installed Linux distribution (such as Debian, Mandriva, Red Hat, or SUSE). This existing Linux system (the host) will be used as a starting point to provide necessary programs, including a compiler, linker, and shell, to build the new system. Select the “development” option during the distribution installation to be able to access these tools.

As an alternative to installing a separate distribution onto your machine, you may wish to use a LiveCD from a commercial distribution.

Chapter 2 of this book describes how to create a new Linux native partition and file system. This is the place where the new LFS system will be compiled and installed. Chapter 3 explains which packages and patches need to be downloaded to build an LFS system and how to store them on the new file system. Chapter 4 discusses the setup of an appropriate working environment. Please read Chapter 4 carefully as it explains several important issues you need be aware of before beginning to work your way through Chapter 5 and beyond.

Chapter 5 explains the installation of a number of packages that will form the basic development suite (or toolchain) which is used to build the actual system in Chapter 6. Some of these packages are needed to resolve circular dependencies—for example, to compile a compiler, you need a compiler.

Chapter 5 also shows you how to build a first pass of the toolchain, including Binutils and GCC (first pass basically means these two core packages will be reinstalled). The next step is to build Glibc, the C library. Glibc will be compiled by the toolchain programs built in the first pass. Then, a second pass of the toolchain will be built. This time, the toolchain will be dynamically linked against the newly built Glibc. The remaining Chapter 5 packages are built using this second pass toolchain. When this is done, the LFS installation process will no longer depend on the host distribution, with the exception of the running kernel.

This effort to isolate the new system from the host distribution may seem excessive. A full technical explanation as to why this is done is provided in Section 5.2, “Toolchain Technical Notes”.

In Chapter 6, the full LFS system is built. The **chroot** (change root) program is used to enter a virtual environment and start a new shell whose root directory will be set to the LFS partition. This is very similar to rebooting and instructing the kernel to mount the LFS partition as the root partition. The system does not actually reboot, but instead **chroot**'s because creating a bootable system requires additional work which is not necessary just yet. The major advantage is that “chrooting” allows you to continue using the host system while LFS is being built. While waiting for package compilations to complete, you can continue using your computer as normal.

To finish the installation, the basic system configuration is set up in Chapter 7, and the kernel and boot loader are set up in Chapter 8. Chapter 9 contains information on continuing the LFS experience beyond this book. After the steps in this book have been implemented, the computer will be ready to reboot into the new LFS system.

This is the process in a nutshell. Detailed information on each step is discussed in the following chapters and package descriptions. Items that may seem complicated will be clarified, and everything will fall into place as you embark on the LFS adventure.

## 1.2. What's new since the last release

Below is a list of package updates made since the previous release of the book.

**Upgraded to:**

•

**Added:**

•

- Acl-2.2.52
- Attr-2.4.47
- D-Bus-1.8.0
- Expat-2.1.0
- glibc-2.19-fhs-1.patch
- Gperf-3.0.4
- Intltool-0.50.2
- LFS-Network-Scripts 20140214
- Libcap-2.24
- Systemd-208
- XML-Parser-2.42\_01

**Removed:**

•

- LFS-Bootscripts-20130821
- Sysklogd-1.5
- Sysvinit-2.88dsf
- Udev-208

## 1.3. Changelog

This is version 7.5-systemd-rc1 of the Linux From Scratch book, dated February 17, 2014. If this book is more than six months old, a newer and better version is probably already available. To find out, please check one of the mirrors via <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html>.

Below is a list of changes made since the previous release of the book.

**Changelog Entries:**

- 2014-02-17
  - [krejzi] - LFS-7.5-systemd-rc1 released.
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20140216 book.
- 2014-02-16
  - [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-3.5.9.

- [bdubbs] - Incorporate beta FHS. Add /usr/share/ppd, /usr/libexec, /usr/share/color, /usr/local/share/color, /var/lib/color, and /usr/share/dict.
- [bdubbs] - Incorporate beta FHS. Remove overrides for /usr/libexec: coreutils, findutils, gawk, gcc, glibc, inetutils, man-db, and tar. Also fixes #3498.
- [bdubbs] - Incorporate beta FHS. Move grub sbin executables from /usr/sbin to /sbin.
- [bdubbs] - Document two new glibc errors in the regression tests.
- [bdubbs] - Move man-db after util-linux to satisfy a test dependency.
- [bdubbs] - Update automake tests to accomodate util-linux in /tools and to speed the test up.
- [bdubbs] - Restore building the flex static library.
- 2014-02-14
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20140214 book.
  - [bdubbs] - Make sed for omit-frame-pointers the same in Chapters 5 and 6. Fixes #3497.
  - [bdubbs] - Simplify zimesone configuration in glibc. Thanks to Chris Staub for the patch. Fixes #3496.
  - [bdubbs] - Let the glibc Makefile install rpc headers. Thanks to Chris Staub for the patch. Fixes #3495.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to linux-3.13.3. Fixes #3493.
- 2014-02-13
  - [bdubbs] - Update to file-5.17. Fixes #3491.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to flex-2.5.38. Fixes #3492.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-3.58. Fixes #3490.
- 2014-02-10
  - [bdubbs] - Update coreutils i18n patch. Thanks to Igor Izivkov for pointing it out. Fixes #3488.
- 2014-02-08
  - [bdubbs] - Update to glibc-2.19. Fixes #3486.
- 2014-02-07
  - [bdubbs] - Update to linux-3.13.2. Fixes #3485.
- 2014-02-05
  - [bdubbs] - Change expect library type in Chapter 5. Thanks to kammet for the report. Fixes #3484.
  - [bdubbs] - Fix e2fsprogs tests to run properly in the LFS chroot environment.
  - [bdubbs] - Remove unnecessary mkdir in groff.
- 2014-02-04
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20140202 book.
  - [krejzi] - Update to D-Bus 1.8.0.
  - [krejzi] - Fix Systemd to build with recent LFS changes.
- 2014-02-02
  - [bdubbs] - Update to linux-3.13.1. Fixes #3483.
- 2014-01-27

- [bdubbs] - Add an environment variable to util-linux in Chapter 5 to prevent an installation error for hosts that have unneeded capabilities available.
- 2014-01-26
  - [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-3.57. Fixes #3480.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to man-db-2.6.6. Fixes #3479.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to linux-3.13. Fixes #3478.
- 2014-01-25
  - [bdubbs] - Add a configure switch to util-linux in Chapter 5 to prevent an installation error for hosts that have systemd installed.
- 2014-01-22
  - [bdubbs] - Update to check-0.9.12. Fixes #3477.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to util-linux-2.24.1. Fixes #3476.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to mpc-1.0.2. Fixes #3474.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-3.56. Fixes #3470.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to linux-3.12.7. Fixes #3469.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to perl-5.18.2. Fixes #3465.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to gettext-0.18.3.2. Fixes #3464.
- 2014-01-21
  - [bdubbs] - Moved util-linux final build to be after udev. Fixed up e2fsprogs and udev to use the Chapter 5 build of util-linux. Fixes #3467.
- 2014-01-17
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20140114 book.
- 2014-01-15
  - [bdubbs] - Added a Chapter 5 build of util-linux in preparation for moving the Chapter 6 build to after udev. This is not the complete fix as this build has not yet been incorporated into Chapter 6.
  - [bdubbs] - Mount /run as a tmpfs for Chapter 6.
- 2014-01-14
  - [bdubbs] - Update to inetutils-1.9.2 and remove referece to old BLFS page. Fixes #3471 and #3473.
  - [bdubbs] - Fix hardcoded reference to /tools in Chapter 6 gcc. Fixes #3466.
  - [bdubbs] - Clean up /run and /tmp. Fixes #3463.
- 2014-01-10
  - [krejzi] - Update to libcap-2.24.
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20140102 book.
- 2014-01-02
  - [bdubbs] - Update to grep-2.16. Fixes #3418.
- 2013-12-29



- [bdubbs] - Update to e2fsprogs-1.42.9. Fixes #3462.
- [bdubbs] - Update to gdbm-1.11. Fixes #3459.
- [bdubbs] - Update to kmod-16. Fixes #3455.
- [bdubbs] - Update to automake-1.14.1. Fixes #3458.
- [bdubbs] - Update readline patch to upstream level. Fixes #3461.
- [bdubbs] - Use gcc version of libiberty.a. Fixes #3456.
- [bdubbs] - Use different URL for shadow. Fixes #3453.
- [bdubbs] - Update coreutils i18n patch to fix problem with uniq. Fixes #3457.
- [bdubbs] - Remove no longer needed makeinfo from Host System Requirements. Fixes #3460.
- 2013-12-22
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20131222 book.
  - [matthew] - Update to Linux-3.12.6. Fixes #3452.
  - [matthew] - Update to Tzdata-2013i. Fixes #3451.
  - [matthew] - Update to Libpipeline-1.2.6. Fixes #3449.
  - [matthew] - Fix the coreutils-i18n patch, which introduced a regression in cut. Fixes #3448.
- 2013-12-21
  - [krejzi] - Added LFS-Network-Script page. Fixes #3350.
  - [krejzi] - Update Systemd instructions and contents for latest version of Systemd.
  - [krejzi] - Update network configuration page to use LFS Systemd specific network configuration.
  - [krejzi] - Merge LFS SVN-20131216 book.
- 2013-12-16
  - [matthew] - Update to Coreutils-8.22. Fixes #3447.
  - [matthew] - Update to Man-Pages-3.55. Fixes #3446.
  - [matthew] - Update to Bison-3.0.2. Fixes #3442.
  - [matthew] - Update to Libpipeline-1.2.5. Fixes #3440.
  - [matthew] - Update to Binutils-2.24. Fixes #3438.
  - [matthew] - Update to File-5.16. Fixes #3437.
  - [matthew] - Update to Linux-3.12.5. Fixes #3436.
- 2013-12-13
  - [bdubbs] - Fix kmod, procs-ng, zlib, readline, ncurses, and xz methods of establishing correct symbolic links for libraries.
  - [bdubbs] - Update to procs-ng-3.3.9. Fixes #3439.
  - [bdubbs] - Install non-essential programs from the xz package in /usr/bin. Fixes #3445.
- 2013-12-10
  - [krejzi] - Start over.
  - [krejzi] - Import LFS SVN-20131207.

- [krejzi] - Remove LFS-Bootscripts-20130821, Sysklogd-1.5.
- [krejzi] - Remove Sysvinit-2.88dsf, Udev-208.
- [krejzi] - Added Acl-2.2.52, Attr-2.4.47, Libcap-2.22.
- [krejzi] - Added D-Bus-1.6.18, Expat-2.1.0, Gperf-3.0.4.
- [krejzi] - Added Intltool-0.50.2, XML::Parser-2.42\_01.
- [krejzi] - Added Libdbus-1.6.18, a package required to satisfy circular dependency between D-Bus and Systemd.
- [krejzi] - Added Systemd-208.
- [krejzi] - Added new LFS-Network-Scripts, a replacement for LFS-Bootscripts in Systemd environment.
- [krejzi] - Updated most of the Chapter 7 instruction for use with Systemd environment. Removed obsolete pages.
- [krejzi] - Updated Kernel configuration page and added required setup for Systemd.
- [krejzi] - Removed unneeded pseudo file systems from /etc/fstab file creation. They are now handled by Systemd.
- [krejzi] - Added glibc FHS patch which prevents nsd daemon from writing into a non-FHS compliant directory.
- [krejzi] - Removed instructions from Coreutils and Findutils that were specific to LFS-Bootscripts.

## 1.4. Resources

### 1.4.1. FAQ

If during the building of the LFS system you encounter any errors, have any questions, or think there is a typo in the book, please start by consulting the Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) that is located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/>.

### 1.4.2. Mailing Lists

The `linuxfromscratch.org` server hosts a number of mailing lists used for the development of the LFS project. These lists include the main development and support lists, among others. If the FAQ does not solve the problem you are having, the next step would be to search the mailing lists at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/search.html>.

For information on the different lists, how to subscribe, archive locations, and additional information, visit <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mail.html>.

### 1.4.3. IRC

Several members of the LFS community offer assistance on Internet Relay Chat (IRC). Before using this support, please make sure that your question is not already answered in the LFS FAQ or the mailing list archives. You can find the IRC network at `irc.freenode.net`. The support channel is named `#LFS-support`.

### 1.4.4. Mirror Sites

The LFS project has a number of world-wide mirrors to make accessing the website and downloading the required packages more convenient. Please visit the LFS website at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html> for a list of current mirrors.

## 1.4.5. Contact Information

Please direct all your questions and comments to one of the LFS mailing lists (see above).

## 1.5. Help

If an issue or a question is encountered while working through this book, please check the FAQ page at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/#generalfaq>. Questions are often already answered there. If your question is not answered on this page, try to find the source of the problem. The following hint will give you some guidance for troubleshooting: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/errors.txt>.

If you cannot find your problem listed in the FAQ, search the mailing lists at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/search.html>.

We also have a wonderful LFS community that is willing to offer assistance through the mailing lists and IRC (see the Section 1.4, “Resources” section of this book). However, we get several support questions every day and many of them can be easily answered by going to the FAQ and by searching the mailing lists first. So, for us to offer the best assistance possible, you need to do some research on your own first. That allows us to focus on the more unusual support needs. If your searches do not produce a solution, please include all relevant information (mentioned below) in your request for help.

### 1.5.1. Things to Mention

Apart from a brief explanation of the problem being experienced, the essential things to include in any request for help are:

- The version of the book being used (in this case 7.5-systemd-rc1)
- The host distribution and version being used to create LFS
- The output from the Section vii.1, “ ”
- The package or section the problem was encountered in
- The exact error message or symptom being received
- Note whether you have deviated from the book at all



#### Note

Deviating from this book does *not* mean that we will not help you. After all, LFS is about personal preference. Being upfront about any changes to the established procedure helps us evaluate and determine possible causes of your problem.

### 1.5.2. Configure Script Problems

If something goes wrong while running the **configure** script, review the `config.log` file. This file may contain errors encountered during **configure** which were not printed to the screen. Include the *relevant* lines if you need to ask for help.

### 1.5.3. Compilation Problems

Both the screen output and the contents of various files are useful in determining the cause of compilation problems. The screen output from the **configure** script and the **make** run can be helpful. It is not necessary to include the entire output, but do include enough of the relevant information. Below is an example of the type of information to include from the screen output from **make**:

```
gcc -DALIAPATH=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale:.\"
-DLOCALEDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale\"
-DLIBDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/lib\"
-DINCLUDEDIR=\"/mnt/lfs/usr/include\" -DHAVE_CONFIG_H -I. -I.
-g -O2 -c getopt1.c
gcc -g -O2 -static -o make ar.o arscan.o commands.o dir.o
expand.o file.o function.o getopt.o implicit.o job.o main.o
misc.o read.o remake.o rule.o signame.o variable.o vpath.o
default.o remote-stub.o version.o opt1.o
-lutil job.o: In function `load_too_high':
/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1/job.c:1565: undefined reference
to `getloadavg'
collect2: ld returned 1 exit status
make[2]: *** [make] Error 1
make[2]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make[1]: *** [all-recursive] Error 1
make[1]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make: *** [all-recursive-am] Error 2
```

In this case, many people would just include the bottom section:

```
make [2]: *** [make] Error 1
```

This is not enough information to properly diagnose the problem because it only notes that something went wrong, not *what* went wrong. The entire section, as in the example above, is what should be saved because it includes the command that was executed and the associated error message(s).

An excellent article about asking for help on the Internet is available online at <http://catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html>. Read and follow the hints in this document to increase the likelihood of getting the help you need.

## **Part II. Preparing for the Build**

# Chapter 2. Preparing a New Partition

## 2.1. Introduction

In this chapter, the partition which will host the LFS system is prepared. We will create the partition itself, create a file system on it, and mount it.

## 2.2. Creating a New Partition

Like most other operating systems, LFS is usually installed on a dedicated partition. The recommended approach to building an LFS system is to use an available empty partition or, if you have enough unpartitioned space, to create one.

A minimal system requires a partition of around 2.8 gigabytes (GB). This is enough to store all the source tarballs and compile the packages. However, if the LFS system is intended to be the primary Linux system, additional software will probably be installed which will require additional space. A 10 GB partition is a reasonable size to provide for growth. The LFS system itself will not take up this much room. A large portion of this requirement is to provide sufficient free temporary storage. Compiling packages can require a lot of disk space which will be reclaimed after the package is installed.

Because there is not always enough Random Access Memory (RAM) available for compilation processes, it is a good idea to use a small disk partition as `swap` space. This is used by the kernel to store seldom-used data and leave more memory available for active processes. The `swap` partition for an LFS system can be the same as the one used by the host system, in which case it is not necessary to create another one.

Start a disk partitioning program such as `cdisk` or `fdisk` with a command line option naming the hard disk on which the new partition will be created—for example `/dev/sda` for the primary Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE) disk. Create a Linux native partition and a `swap` partition, if needed. Please refer to `cdisk(8)` or `fdisk(8)` if you do not yet know how to use the programs.



### Note

For experienced users, other partitioning schemes are possible. The new LFS system can be on a software *RAID* array or an *LVM* logical volume. However, some of these options require an *initramfs*, which is an advanced topic. These partitioning methodologies are not recommended for first time LFS users.

Remember the designation of the new partition (e.g., `sda5`). This book will refer to this as the LFS partition. Also remember the designation of the `swap` partition. These names will be needed later for the `/etc/fstab` file.

### 2.2.1. Other Partition Issues

Requests for advice on system partitioning are often posted on the LFS mailing lists. This is a highly subjective topic. The default for most distributions is to use the entire drive with the exception of one small `swap` partition. This is not optimal for LFS for several reasons. It reduces flexibility, makes sharing of data across multiple distributions or LFS builds more difficult, makes backups more time consuming, and can waste disk space through inefficient allocation of file system structures.

#### 2.2.1.1. The Root Partition

A root LFS partition (not to be confused with the `/root` directory) of ten gigabytes is a good compromise for most systems. It provides enough space to build LFS and most of BLFS, but is small enough so that multiple partitions can be easily created for experimentation.

### 2.2.1.2. The Swap Partition

Most distributions automatically create a swap partition. Generally the recommended size of the swap partition is about twice the amount of physical RAM, however this is rarely needed. If disk space is limited, hold the swap partition to two gigabytes and monitor the amount of disk swapping.

Swapping is never good. Generally you can tell if a system is swapping by just listening to disk activity and observing how the system reacts to commands. The first reaction to swapping should be to check for an unreasonable command such as trying to edit a five gigabyte file. If swapping becomes a normal occurrence, the best solution is to purchase more RAM for your system.

### 2.2.1.3. Convenience Partitions

There are several other partitions that are not required, but should be considered when designing a disk layout. The following list is not comprehensive, but is meant as a guide.

- `/boot` – Highly recommended. Use this partition to store kernels and other booting information. To minimize potential boot problems with larger disks, make this the first physical partition on your first disk drive. A partition size of 100 megabytes is quite adequate.
- `/home` – Highly recommended. Share your home directory and user customization across multiple distributions or LFS builds. The size is generally fairly large and depends on available disk space.
- `/usr` – A separate `/usr` partition is generally used if providing a server for a thin client or diskless workstation. It is normally not needed for LFS. A size of five gigabytes will handle most installations.
- `/opt` – This directory is most useful for BLFS where multiple installations of large packages like Gnome or KDE can be installed without embedding the files in the `/usr` hierarchy. If used, 5 to 10 gigabytes is generally adequate.
- `/tmp` – A separate `/tmp` directory is rare, but useful if configuring a thin client. This partition, if used, will usually not need to exceed a couple of gigabytes.
- `/usr/src` – This partition is very useful for providing a location to store BLFS source files and share them across LFS builds. It can also be used as a location for building BLFS packages. A reasonably large partition of 30-50 gigabytes allows plenty of room.

Any separate partition that you want automatically mounted upon boot needs to be specified in the `/etc/fstab`. Details about how to specify partitions will be discussed in Section 8.2, “Creating the `/etc/fstab` File”.

## 2.3. Creating a File System on the Partition

Now that a blank partition has been set up, the file system can be created. LFS can use any file system recognized by the Linux kernel, but the most common types are `ext3` and `ext4`. The choice of file system can be complex and depends on the characteristics of the files and the size of the partition. For example:

`ext2`

is suitable for small partitions that are updated infrequently such as `/boot`.

`ext3`

is an upgrade to `ext2` that includes a journal to help recover the partition's status in the case of an unclean shutdown. It is commonly used as a general purpose file system.

`ext4`

is the latest version of the `ext` file system family of partition types. It provides several new capabilities including nano-second timestamps, creation and use of very large files (16 TB), and speed improvements.

Other file systems, including FAT32, NTFS, ReiserFS, JFS, and XFS are useful for specialized purposes. More information about these file systems can be found at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison\\_of\\_file\\_systems](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_file_systems).

LFS assumes that the root file system (/) is of type ext4. To create an ext4 file system on the LFS partition, run the following:

```
mkfs -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx>
```

If you are using an existing swap partition, there is no need to format it. If a new swap partition was created, it will need to be initialized with this command:

```
mkswap /dev/<yyy>
```

Replace <yyy> with the name of the swap partition.

## 2.4. Mounting the New Partition

Now that a file system has been created, the partition needs to be made accessible. In order to do this, the partition needs to be mounted at a chosen mount point. For the purposes of this book, it is assumed that the file system is mounted under /mnt/lfs, but the directory choice is up to you.

Choose a mount point and assign it to the LFS environment variable by running:

```
export LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

Next, create the mount point and mount the LFS file system by running:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx> $LFS
```

Replace <xxx> with the designation of the LFS partition.

If using multiple partitions for LFS (e.g., one for / and another for /usr), mount them using:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx> $LFS
mkdir -v $LFS/usr
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<yyy> $LFS/usr
```

Replace <xxx> and <yyy> with the appropriate partition names.

Ensure that this new partition is not mounted with permissions that are too restrictive (such as the nosuid or nodev options). Run the **mount** command without any parameters to see what options are set for the mounted LFS partition. If nosuid, nodev, and/or noatime are set, the partition will need to be remounted.

If you are using a swap partition, ensure that it is enabled using the **swapon** command:

```
/sbin/swapon -v /dev/<zzz>
```

Replace <zzz> with the name of the swap partition.

Now that there is an established place to work, it is time to download the packages.



## Chapter 3. Packages and Patches

### 3.1. Introduction

This chapter includes a list of packages that need to be downloaded in order to build a basic Linux system. The listed version numbers correspond to versions of the software that are known to work, and this book is based on their use. We highly recommend against using newer versions because the build commands for one version may not work with a newer version. The newest package versions may also have problems that require work-arounds. These work-arounds will be developed and stabilized in the development version of the book.

Download locations may not always be accessible. If a download location has changed since this book was published, Google (<http://www.google.com/>) provides a useful search engine for most packages. If this search is unsuccessful, try one of the alternative means of downloading discussed at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/packages.html#packages>.

Downloaded packages and patches will need to be stored somewhere that is conveniently available throughout the entire build. A working directory is also required to unpack the sources and build them. `$LFS/sources` can be used both as the place to store the tarballs and patches and as a working directory. By using this directory, the required elements will be located on the LFS partition and will be available during all stages of the building process.

To create this directory, execute the following command, as user `root`, before starting the download session:

```
mkdir -v $LFS/sources
```

Make this directory writable and sticky. “Sticky” means that even if multiple users have write permission on a directory, only the owner of a file can delete the file within a sticky directory. The following command will enable the write and sticky modes:

```
chmod -v a+wt $LFS/sources
```

An easy way to download all of the packages and patches is by using `wget-list` as an input to `wget`. For example:

```
wget -i wget-list -P $LFS/sources
```

Additionally, starting with LFS-7.0, there is a separate file, `md5sums`, can be used to verify that all the correct packages are available before proceeding. Place that file in `$LFS/sources` and run:

```
pushd $LFS/sources  
md5sum -c md5sums  
popd
```

### 3.2. All Packages

Download or otherwise obtain the following packages:

- **Acl (2.2.52) - 380 KB:**

Download: <http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/acl/acl-2.2.52.src.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: a61415312426e9c2212bd7dc7929abda

- **Attr (2.4.47) - 336 KB:**

Download: <http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/attr/attr-2.4.47.src.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 84f58dec00b60f2dc8fd1c9709291cc7

**• Autoconf (2.69) - 1,186 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/autoconf/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/autoconf/autoconf-2.69.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 50f97f4159805e374639a73e2636f22e

**• Automake (1.14.1) - 1,456 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/automake/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/automake/automake-1.14.1.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 7fc29854c520f56b07aa232a0f880292

**• Bash (4.2) - 6,845 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/bash/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bash/bash-4.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 3fb927c7c33022f1c327f14a81c0d4b0

**• Bc (1.06.95) - 288 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/bc/>

Download: <http://alpha.gnu.org/gnu/bc/bc-1.06.95.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 5126a721b73f97d715bb72c13c889035

**• Binutils (2.24) - 22,184 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/binutils/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/binutils/binutils-2.24.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: e0f71a7b2ddab0f8612336ac81d9636b

**• Bison (3.0.2) - 1,882 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/bison/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bison/bison-3.0.2.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 146be9ff9fbd27497f0bf2286a5a2082

**• Bzip2 (1.0.6) - 764 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.bzip.org/>

Download: <http://www.bzip.org/1.0.6/bzip2-1.0.6.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 00b516f4704d4a7cb50a1d97e6e8e15b

**• Check (0.9.12) - 714 KB:**

Home page: <http://check.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://sourceforge.net/projects/check/files/check/0.9.12/check-0.9.12.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 46fe540d1a03714c7a1967dbc6d484e7

**• Coreutils (8.22) - 5,210 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/coreutils/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/coreutils/coreutils-8.22.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 8fb0ae2267aa6e728958adc38f8163a2

**• D-Bus (1.8.0) - 1,820 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/dbus>

Download: <http://dbus.freedesktop.org/releases/dbus/dbus-1.8.0.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 059fbe84e39fc99c67a14f15b1f39dff

• **DejaGNU (1.5.1) - 566 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/dejagnu/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/dejagnu/dejagnu-1.5.1.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 8386e04e362345f50ad169f052f4c4ab

• **Diffutils (3.3) - 1,170 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/diffutils/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/diffutils/diffutils-3.3.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 99180208ec2a82ce71f55b0d7389f1b3

• **E2fsprogs (1.42.9) - 5,928 KB:**

Home page: <http://e2fsprogs.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/e2fsprogs/e2fsprogs-1.42.9.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 3f8e41e63b432ba114b33f58674563f7

• **Expat (2.1.0) - 552 KB:**

Home page: <http://expat.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/expat/expat-2.1.0.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: dd7dab7a5fea97d2a6a43f511449b7cd

• **Expect (5.45) - 614 KB:**

Home page: <http://expect.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/expect/expect5.45.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 44e1a4f4c877e9ddc5a542dfa7ecc92b

• **File (5.17) - 694 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.darwinsys.com/file/>

Download: <ftp://ftp.astron.com/pub/file/file-5.17.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: e19c47e069ced7b01ccb4db402cc01d3



**Note**

File (5.17) may no longer be available at the listed location. The site administrators of the master download location occasionally remove older versions when new ones are released. An alternative download location that may have the correct version available can also be found at: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/download.html#ftp>.

• **Findutils (4.4.2) - 2,100 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/findutils/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/findutils/findutils-4.4.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 351cc4adb07d54877fa15f75fb77d39f

• **Flex (2.5.38) - 1,590 KB:**

Home page: <http://flex.sourceforge.net>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/flex/flex-2.5.38.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: b230c88e65996ff74994d08a2a2e0f27

• **Gawk (4.1.0) - 2,004 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gawk/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gawk/gawk-4.1.0.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: b18992ff8faf3217dab55d2d0aa7d707

**• GCC (4.8.2) - 83,984 KB:**

Home page: <http://gcc.gnu.org/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-4.8.2/gcc-4.8.2.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: a3d7d63b9cb6b6ea049469a0c4a43c9d

**• GDBM (1.11) - 796 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gdbm/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gdbm/gdbm-1.11.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 72c832680cf0999caedbe5b265c8c1bd

**• Gettext (0.18.3.2) - 15,810 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gettext/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gettext/gettext-0.18.3.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 241aba309d07aa428252c74b40a818ef

**• Glibc (2.19) - 11,801 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/libc/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/glibc-2.19.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: e26b8cc666b162f999404b03970f14e4

**• GMP (5.1.3) - 1,777 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gmp/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gmp/gmp-5.1.3.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: e5fe367801ff067b923d1e6a126448aa

**• Gperf (3.0.4) - 960 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gperf/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gperf/gperf-3.0.4.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: c1f1db32fb6598d6a93e6e88796a8632

**• Grep (2.16) - 1,184 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/grep/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/grep/grep-2.16.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 502350a6c8f7c2b12ee58829e760b44d

**• Groff (1.22.2) - 3,926 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/groff/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/groff/groff-1.22.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 9f4cd592a5efc7e36481d8d8d8af6d16

**• GRUB (2.00) - 5,016 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/grub/grub-2.00.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: a1043102fbc7bcedbf53e7ee3d17ab91

**• Gzip (1.6) - 712 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/gzip/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gzip/gzip-1.6.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: da981f86677d58a106496e68de6f8995

- **Iana-Etc (2.30) - 201 KB:**

Home page: <http://freshmeat.net/projects/iana-etc/>

Download: <http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/sources/LFS/lfs-packages/conglomeration//iana-etc/iana-etc-2.30.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 3ba3afb1d1b261383d247f46cb135ee8

- **Inetutils (1.9.2) - 2,188 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/inetutils/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/inetutils/inetutils-1.9.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: aa1a9a132259db83e66c1f3265065ba2

- **Intltool (0.50.2) - 185 KB:**

Home page: <http://freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/intltool>

Download: <http://launchpad.net/intltool/trunk/0.50.2/+download/intltool-0.50.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 23fbd879118253cb99aeac067da5f591

- **IPRoute2 (3.12.0) - 415 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/net/iproute2/>

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/net/iproute2/iproute2-3.12.0.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: f87386aaaecafab95607fd10e8152c68

- **Kbd (2.0.1) - 1,962 KB:**

Home page: <http://ftp.altlinux.org/pub/people/legion/kbd>

Download: <http://ftp.altlinux.org/pub/people/legion/kbd/kbd-2.0.1.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: cc0ee9f2537d8636cae85a8c6541ed2e

- **Kmod (16) - 1,408 KB:**

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kernel/kmod/kmod-16.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 3006a0287211212501cdfel211b29f09

- **Less (458) - 308 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.greenwoodsoftware.com/less/>

Download: <http://www.greenwoodsoftware.com/less/less-458.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 935b38aa2e73c888c210dedf8fd94f49

- **LFS-Network-Scripts (20140214) - 22 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/downloads/7.5-systemd-rc1/lfs-network-scripts-20140214.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 3c67714167e09c727e3422e20284765d

- **Libcap (2.24) - 64 KB:**

Home page: <https://sites.google.com/site/fullycapable/>

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/security/linux-privs/libcap2/libcap-2.24.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: d43ab9f680435a7fff35b4ace8d45b80

- **Libpipeline (1.2.6) - 761 KB:**

Home page: <http://libpipeline.nongnu.org/>

Download: <http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/libpipeline/libpipeline-1.2.6.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 6d1d51a5dc102af41e0d269d2a31e6f9

- **Libtool (2.4.2) - 2,571 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/libtool/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/libtool/libtool-2.4.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: d2f3b7d4627e69e13514a40e72a24d50

- **Linux (3.13.3) - 75,393 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.kernel.org/>

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/v3.x/linux-3.13.3.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: ad98a0c623a124a25dab86406ddc7119



### Note

The Linux kernel is updated relatively often, many times due to discoveries of security vulnerabilities. The latest available 3.13.x kernel version should be used, unless the errata page says otherwise.

For users with limited speed or expensive bandwidth who wish to update the Linux kernel, a baseline version of the package and patches can be downloaded separately. This may save some time or cost for a subsequent patch level upgrade within a minor release.

- **M4 (1.4.17) - 1,122 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/m4/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/m4/m4-1.4.17.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 12a3c829301a4fd6586a57d3fcf196dc

- **Make (4.0) - 1,311 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/make/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/make/make-4.0.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 571d470a7647b455e3af3f92d79f1c18

- **Man-DB (2.6.6) - 1,415 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.nongnu.org/man-db/>

Download: <http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/man-db/man-db-2.6.6.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 5d65d66191080c144437a6c854e17868

- **Man-pages (3.59) - 1,172 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.kernel.org/doc/man-pages/>

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/docs/man-pages/man-pages-3.59.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: d8e4d8287a76ee861351b905044c8e92

- **MPC (1.0.2) - 619 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.multiprecision.org/>

Download: <http://www.multiprecision.org/mpc/download/mpc-1.0.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 68fadff3358fb3e7976c7a398a0af4c3

- **MPFR (3.1.2) - 1,049 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.mpfr.org/>

Download: <http://www.mpfr.org/mpfr-3.1.2/mpfr-3.1.2.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: e3d203d188b8fe60bb6578dd3152e05c

- **Ncurses (5.9) - 2,760 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/ncurses/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ncurses/ncurses-5.9.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 8cb9c412e5f2d96bc6f459aa8c6282a1

- **Patch (2.7.1) - 660 KB:**

Home page: <http://savannah.gnu.org/projects/patch/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/patch/patch-2.7.1.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: e9ae5393426d3ad783a300a338c09b72

- **Perl (5.18.2) - 13,730 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.perl.org/>

Download: <http://www.cpan.org/src/5.0/perl-5.18.2.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: d549b16ee4e9210988da39193a9389c1

- **Pkg-config (0.28) - 1,892 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/pkg-config>

Download: <http://pkgconfig.freedesktop.org/releases/pkg-config-0.28.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: aa3c86e67551adc3ac865160e34a2a0d

- **Procps (3.3.9) - 548 KB:**

Home page: <http://sourceforge.net/projects/procps-ng>

Download: <http://sourceforge.net/projects/procps-ng/files/Production/procps-ng-3.3.9.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 0980646fa25e0be58f7afb6b98f79d74

- **Psmisc (22.20) - 422 KB:**

Home page: <http://psmisc.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/psmisc/psmisc-22.20.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: a25fc99a6dc7fa7ae6e4549be80b401f

- **Readline (6.2) - 2,225 KB:**

Home page: <http://cnswww.cns.cwru.edu/php/chet/readline/rltop.html>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/readline/readline-6.2.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 67948acb2ca081f23359d0256e9a271c

- **Sed (4.2.2) - 1,035 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/sed/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sed/sed-4.2.2.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 7ffe1c7cdc3233e1e0c4b502df253974

- **Shadow (4.1.5.1) - 3,428 KB:**

Download: [http://cdn.debian.net/debian/pool/main/s/shadow/shadow\\_4.1.5.1.orig.tar.gz](http://cdn.debian.net/debian/pool/main/s/shadow/shadow_4.1.5.1.orig.tar.gz)

MD5 sum: ae66de9953f840fb3a97f6148bc39a30

- **Tar (1.27.1) - 1,835 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/tar/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/tar/tar-1.27.1.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: e0382a4064e09a4943f3adef1435978

- **Tcl (8.6.1) - 8,551 KB:**

Home page: <http://tcl.sourceforge.net/>

Download: <http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.6.1-src.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: aae4b701ee527c6e4e1a6f9c7399882e

- **Time Zone Data (2013i) - 214 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.iana.org/time-zones>

Download: <http://www.iana.org/time-zones/repository/releases/tzdata2013i.tar.gz>

MD5 sum: 8bc69eb75bea496ebe1d5a9ab576702d

- **Texinfo (5.2) - 3,724 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.gnu.org/software/texinfo/>

Download: <http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/texinfo/texinfo-5.2.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: cb489df8a7ee9d10a236197aefdb32c5

- **Systemd (208) - 2,328 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/systemd/>

Download: <http://www.freedesktop.org/software/systemd/systemd-208.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: df64550d92afbfb4f67a434193ee165

- **Util-linux (2.24.1) - 3,461 KB:**

Home page: <http://userweb.kernel.org/~kzak/util-linux/>

Download: <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/util-linux/v2.24/util-linux-2.24.1.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 88d46ae23ca599ac5af9cf96b531590f

- **Vim (7.4) - 9,632 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.vim.org>

Download: <ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/unix/vim-7.4.tar.bz2>

MD5 sum: 607e135c559be642f210094ad023dc65

- **XML::Parser (2.42\_01) - 236 KB:**

Home page: <https://github.com/chorny/XML-Parser>

Download: [http://search.cpan.org/CPAN/authors/id/T/TO/TODDR/XML-Parser-2.42\\_01.tar.gz](http://search.cpan.org/CPAN/authors/id/T/TO/TODDR/XML-Parser-2.42_01.tar.gz)

MD5 sum: a4650aebcc464bb91113c2c356da8210

- **Xz Utils (5.0.5) - 894 KB:**

Home page: <http://tukaani.org/xz>

Download: <http://tukaani.org/xz/xz-5.0.5.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: aa17280f4521dbeebed0fbd11cd7fa30

- **Zlib (1.2.8) - 441 KB:**

Home page: <http://www.zlib.net/>

Download: <http://www.zlib.net/zlib-1.2.8.tar.xz>

MD5 sum: 28f1205d8dd2001f26fec1e8c2cebe37

Total size of these packages: about 327 MB

### 3.3. Needed Patches

In addition to the packages, several patches are also required. These patches correct any mistakes in the packages that should be fixed by the maintainer. The patches also make small modifications to make the packages easier to work with. The following patches will be needed to build an LFS system:

- **Bash Upstream Fixes Patch - 56 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/bash-4.2-fixes-12.patch>

MD5 sum: 419f95c173596aea47a23d922598977a

- **Bzip2 Documentation Patch - 1.6 KB:**

Download: [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/bzip2-1.0.6-install\\_docs-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/bzip2-1.0.6-install_docs-1.patch)

MD5 sum: 6a5ac7e89b791aae556de0f745916f7f

- **Coreutils Internationalization Fixes Patch - 140 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/coreutils-8.22-i18n-4.patch>

MD5 sum: 54c99871cd0ca20f29bdc9462e27f0df

- **Glibc FHS Patch - 2.8 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/glibc-2.19-fhs-1.patch>

MD5 sum: 9a5997c3452909b1769918c759eff8a2



- **Kbd Backspace/Delete Fix Patch - 12 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/kbd-2.0.1-backspace-1.patch>

MD5 sum: f75cca16a38da6caa7d52151f7136895

- **Perl Libc Patch - 1.6 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/perl-5.18.2-libc-1.patch>

MD5 sum: daf5c64fd7311e924966842680535f8f

- **Readline Upstream Fixes Patch - 3.3 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/readline-6.2-fixes-2.patch>

MD5 sum: b793b2bf1306bc62e5f1e7ebbdac2f35

- **Tar Manpage Patch - 7.8 KB:**

Download: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/7.5-systemd-rc1/tar-1.27.1-manpage-1.patch>

MD5 sum: 321f85ec32733b1a9399e788714a5156

Total size of these patches: about 225.1 KB

In addition to the above required patches, there exist a number of optional patches created by the LFS community. These optional patches solve minor problems or enable functionality that is not enabled by default. Feel free to peruse the patches database located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/downloads/> and acquire any additional patches to suit your system needs.

## Chapter 4. Final Preparations

### 4.1. About \$LFS

Throughout this book, the environment variable `LFS` will be used. It is paramount that this variable is always defined. It should be set to the mount point chosen for the LFS partition. Check that the `LFS` variable is set up properly with:

```
echo $LFS
```

Make sure the output shows the path to the LFS partition's mount point, which is `/mnt/lfs` if the provided example was followed. If the output is incorrect, the variable can be set with:

```
export LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

Having this variable set is beneficial in that commands such as `mkdir $LFS/tools` can be typed literally. The shell will automatically replace “\$LFS” with “/mnt/lfs” (or whatever the variable was set to) when it processes the command line.

Do not forget to check that `$LFS` is set whenever you leave and reenter the current working environment (as when doing a `su` to `root` or another user).

### 4.2. Creating the \$LFS/tools Directory

All programs compiled in Chapter 5 will be installed under `$LFS/tools` to keep them separate from the programs compiled in Chapter 6. The programs compiled here are temporary tools and will not be a part of the final LFS system. By keeping these programs in a separate directory, they can easily be discarded later after their use. This also prevents these programs from ending up in the host production directories (easy to do by accident in Chapter 5).

Create the required directory by running the following as `root`:

```
mkdir -v $LFS/tools
```

The next step is to create a `/tools` symlink on the host system. This will point to the newly-created directory on the LFS partition. Run this command as `root` as well:

```
ln -sv $LFS/tools /
```



#### Note

The above command is correct. The `ln` command has a few syntactic variations, so be sure to check **info coreutils ln** and `ln(1)` before reporting what you may think is an error.

The created symlink enables the toolchain to be compiled so that it always refers to `/tools`, meaning that the compiler, assembler, and linker will work both in Chapter 5 (when we are still using some tools from the host) and in the next (when we are “chrooted” to the LFS partition).

## 4.3. Adding the LFS User

When logged in as user `root`, making a single mistake can damage or destroy a system. Therefore, we recommend building the packages in this chapter as an unprivileged user. You could use your own user name, but to make it easier to set up a clean working environment, create a new user called `lfs` as a member of a new group (also named `lfs`) and use this user during the installation process. As `root`, issue the following commands to add the new user:

```
groupadd lfs
useradd -s /bin/bash -g lfs -m -k /dev/null lfs
```

The meaning of the command line options:

`-s /bin/bash`

This makes **bash** the default shell for user `lfs`.

`-g lfs`

This option adds user `lfs` to group `lfs`.

`-m`

This creates a home directory for `lfs`.

`-k /dev/null`

This parameter prevents possible copying of files from a skeleton directory (default is `/etc/skel`) by changing the input location to the special null device.

`lfs`

This is the actual name for the created group and user.

To log in as `lfs` (as opposed to switching to user `lfs` when logged in as `root`, which does not require the `lfs` user to have a password), give `lfs` a password:

```
passwd lfs
```

Grant `lfs` full access to `$LFS/tools` by making `lfs` the directory owner:

```
chown -v lfs $LFS/tools
```

If a separate working directory was created as suggested, give user `lfs` ownership of this directory:

```
chown -v lfs $LFS/sources
```

Next, login as user `lfs`. This can be done via a virtual console, through a display manager, or with the following substitute user command:

```
su - lfs
```

The “-” instructs `su` to start a login shell as opposed to a non-login shell. The difference between these two types of shells can be found in detail in `bash(1)` and **info bash**.

## 4.4. Setting Up the Environment

Set up a good working environment by creating two new startup files for the **bash** shell. While logged in as user `lfs`, issue the following command to create a new `.bash_profile`:

```
cat > ~/.bash_profile << "EOF"
exec env -i HOME=$HOME TERM=$TERM PS1='\u:\w\$ ' /bin/bash
EOF
```

When logged on as user `lfs`, the initial shell is usually a *login* shell which reads the `/etc/profile` of the host (probably containing some settings and environment variables) and then `.bash_profile`. The **`exec env -i.../bin/bash`** command in the `.bash_profile` file replaces the running shell with a new one with a completely empty environment, except for the `HOME`, `TERM`, and `PS1` variables. This ensures that no unwanted and potentially hazardous environment variables from the host system leak into the build environment. The technique used here achieves the goal of ensuring a clean environment.

The new instance of the shell is a *non-login* shell, which does not read the `/etc/profile` or `.bash_profile` files, but rather reads the `.bashrc` file instead. Create the `.bashrc` file now:

```
cat > ~/.bashrc << "EOF"
set +h
umask 022
LFS=/mnt/lfs
LC_ALL=POSIX
LFS_TGT=$(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu
PATH=/tools/bin:/bin:/usr/bin
export LFS LC_ALL LFS_TGT PATH
EOF
```

The **`set +h`** command turns off **`bash`**'s hash function. Hashing is ordinarily a useful feature—**`bash`** uses a hash table to remember the full path of executable files to avoid searching the `PATH` time and again to find the same executable. However, the new tools should be used as soon as they are installed. By switching off the hash function, the shell will always search the `PATH` when a program is to be run. As such, the shell will find the newly compiled tools in `$LFS/tools` as soon as they are available without remembering a previous version of the same program in a different location.

Setting the user file-creation mask (`umask`) to `022` ensures that newly created files and directories are only writable by their owner, but are readable and executable by anyone (assuming default modes are used by the `open(2)` system call, new files will end up with permission mode `644` and directories with mode `755`).

The `LFS` variable should be set to the chosen mount point.

The `LC_ALL` variable controls the localization of certain programs, making their messages follow the conventions of a specified country. If the host system uses a version of `Glibc` older than `2.2.4`, having `LC_ALL` set to something other than “`POSIX`” or “`C`” (during this chapter) may cause issues if you exit the `chroot` environment and wish to return later. Setting `LC_ALL` to “`POSIX`” or “`C`” (the two are equivalent) ensures that everything will work as expected in the `chroot` environment.

The `LFS_TGT` variable sets a non-default, but compatible machine description for use when building our cross compiler and linker and when cross compiling our temporary toolchain. More information is contained in Section 5.2, “Toolchain Technical Notes”.

By putting `/tools/bin` ahead of the standard `PATH`, all the programs installed in Chapter 5 are picked up by the shell immediately after their installation. This, combined with turning off hashing, limits the risk that old programs are used from the host when the same programs are available in the chapter 5 environment.

Finally, to have the environment fully prepared for building the temporary tools, source the just-created user profile:

```
source ~/.bash_profile
```

## 4.5. About SBUs

Many people would like to know beforehand approximately how long it takes to compile and install each package. Because Linux From Scratch can be built on many different systems, it is impossible to provide accurate time estimates. The biggest package (Glibc) will take approximately 20 minutes on the fastest systems, but could take up to three days on slower systems! Instead of providing actual times, the Standard Build Unit (SBU) measure will be used instead.

The SBU measure works as follows. The first package to be compiled from this book is Binutils in Chapter 5. The time it takes to compile this package is what will be referred to as the Standard Build Unit or SBU. All other compile times will be expressed relative to this time.

For example, consider a package whose compilation time is 4.5 SBUs. This means that if a system took 10 minutes to compile and install the first pass of Binutils, it will take *approximately* 45 minutes to build this example package. Fortunately, most build times are shorter than the one for Binutils.

In general, SBUs are not entirely accurate because they depend on many factors, including the host system's version of GCC. They are provided here to give an estimate of how long it might take to install a package, but the numbers can vary by as much as dozens of minutes in some cases.

To view actual timings for a number of specific machines, we recommend The LinuxFromScratch SBU Home Page at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/~sbu/>.



### Note

For many modern systems with multiple processors (or cores) the compilation time for a package can be reduced by performing a "parallel make" by either setting an environment variable or telling the **make** program how many processors are available. For instance, a Core2Duo can support two simultaneous processes with:

```
export MAKEFLAGS='-j 2'
```

or just building with:

```
make -j2
```

When multiple processors are used in this way, the SBU units in the book will vary even more than they normally would. Analyzing the output of the build process will also be more difficult because the lines of different processes will be interleaved. If you run into a problem with a build step, revert back to a single processor build to properly analyze the error messages.

## 4.6. About the Test Suites

Most packages provide a test suite. Running the test suite for a newly built package is a good idea because it can provide a "sanity check" indicating that everything compiled correctly. A test suite that passes its set of checks usually proves that the package is functioning as the developer intended. It does not, however, guarantee that the package is totally bug free.

Some test suites are more important than others. For example, the test suites for the core toolchain packages—GCC, Binutils, and Glibc—are of the utmost importance due to their central role in a properly functioning system. The test suites for GCC and Glibc can take a very long time to complete, especially on slower hardware, but are strongly recommended.

**Note**

Experience has shown that there is little to be gained from running the test suites in Chapter 5. There can be no escaping the fact that the host system always exerts some influence on the tests in that chapter, often causing inexplicable failures. Because the tools built in Chapter 5 are temporary and eventually discarded, we do not recommend running the test suites in Chapter 5 for the average reader. The instructions for running those test suites are provided for the benefit of testers and developers, but they are strictly optional.

A common issue with running the test suites for Binutils and GCC is running out of pseudo terminals (PTYs). This can result in a high number of failing tests. This may happen for several reasons, but the most likely cause is that the host system does not have the `devpts` file system set up correctly. This issue is discussed in greater detail at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/faq.html#no-ptys>.

Sometimes package test suites will fail, but for reasons which the developers are aware of and have deemed non-critical. Consult the logs located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/build-logs/7.5-systemd-rc1/> to verify whether or not these failures are expected. This site is valid for all tests throughout this book.

# Chapter 5. Constructing a Temporary System

## 5.1. Introduction

This chapter shows how to build a minimal Linux system. This system will contain just enough tools to start constructing the final LFS system in Chapter 6 and allow a working environment with more user convenience than a minimum environment would.

There are two steps in building this minimal system. The first step is to build a new and host-independent toolchain (compiler, assembler, linker, libraries, and a few useful utilities). The second step uses this toolchain to build the other essential tools.

The files compiled in this chapter will be installed under the `$LFS/tools` directory to keep them separate from the files installed in the next chapter and the host production directories. Since the packages compiled here are temporary, we do not want them to pollute the soon-to-be LFS system.

## 5.2. Toolchain Technical Notes

This section explains some of the rationale and technical details behind the overall build method. It is not essential to immediately understand everything in this section. Most of this information will be clearer after performing an actual build. This section can be referred to at any time during the process.

The overall goal of Chapter 5 is to produce a temporary area that contains a known-good set of tools that can be isolated from the host system. By using **chroot**, the commands in the remaining chapters will be contained within that environment, ensuring a clean, trouble-free build of the target LFS system. The build process has been designed to minimize the risks for new readers and to provide the most educational value at the same time.



### Note

Before continuing, be aware of the name of the working platform, often referred to as the target triplet. A simple way to determine the name of the target triplet is to run the **config.guess** script that comes with the source for many packages. Unpack the Binutils sources and run the script: `./config.guess` and note the output. For example, for a modern 32-bit Intel processor the output will likely be *i686-pc-linux-gnu*.

Also be aware of the name of the platform's dynamic linker, often referred to as the dynamic loader (not to be confused with the standard linker **ld** that is part of Binutils). The dynamic linker provided by Glibc finds and loads the shared libraries needed by a program, prepares the program to run, and then runs it. The name of the dynamic linker for a 32-bit Intel machine will be `ld-linux.so.2`. A sure-fire way to determine the name of the dynamic linker is to inspect a random binary from the host system by running: `readelf -l <name of binary> | grep interpreter` and noting the output. The authoritative reference covering all platforms is in the `shlib-versions` file in the root of the Glibc source tree.

Some key technical points of how the Chapter 5 build method works:

- Slightly adjusting the name of the working platform, by changing the "vendor" field target triplet by way of the `LFS_TGT` variable, ensures that the first build of Binutils and GCC produces a compatible cross-linker and cross-compiler. Instead of producing binaries for another architecture, the cross-linker and cross-compiler will produce binaries compatible with the current hardware.

- The temporary libraries are cross-compiled. Because a cross-compiler by its nature cannot rely on anything from its host system, this method removes potential contamination of the target system by lessening the chance of headers or libraries from the host being incorporated into the new tools. Cross-compilation also allows for the possibility of building both 32-bit and 64-bit libraries on 64-bit capable hardware.
- Careful manipulation of the GCC source tells the compiler which target dynamic linker will be used.

Binutils is installed first because the **configure** runs of both GCC and Glibc perform various feature tests on the assembler and linker to determine which software features to enable or disable. This is more important than one might first realize. An incorrectly configured GCC or Glibc can result in a subtly broken toolchain, where the impact of such breakage might not show up until near the end of the build of an entire distribution. A test suite failure will usually highlight this error before too much additional work is performed.

Binutils installs its assembler and linker in two locations, `/tools/bin` and `/tools/$LFS_TGT/bin`. The tools in one location are hard linked to the other. An important facet of the linker is its library search order. Detailed information can be obtained from **ld** by passing it the `--verbose` flag. For example, an `ld --verbose | grep SEARCH` will illustrate the current search paths and their order. It shows which files are linked by **ld** by compiling a dummy program and passing the `--verbose` switch to the linker. For example, `gcc dummy.c -Wl,--verbose 2>&1 | grep succeeded` will show all the files successfully opened during the linking.

The next package installed is GCC. An example of what can be seen during its run of **configure** is:

```
checking what assembler to use... /tools/i686-lfs-linux-gnu/bin/as
checking what linker to use... /tools/i686-lfs-linux-gnu/bin/ld
```

This is important for the reasons mentioned above. It also demonstrates that GCC's **configure** script does not search the `PATH` directories to find which tools to use. However, during the actual operation of **gcc** itself, the same search paths are not necessarily used. To find out which standard linker **gcc** will use, run: `gcc -print-prog-name=ld`.

Detailed information can be obtained from **gcc** by passing it the `-v` command line option while compiling a dummy program. For example, `gcc -v dummy.c` will show detailed information about the preprocessor, compilation, and assembly stages, including **gcc**'s included search paths and their order.

Next installed are sanitized Linux API headers. These allow the standard C library (Glibc) to interface with features that the Linux kernel will provide.

The next package installed is Glibc. The most important considerations for building Glibc are the compiler, binary tools, and kernel headers. The compiler is generally not an issue since Glibc will always use the compiler relating to the `--host` parameter passed to its **configure** script, e.g. in our case, **i686-lfs-linux-gnu-gcc**. The binary tools and kernel headers can be a bit more complicated. Therefore, take no risks and use the available **configure** switches to enforce the correct selections. After the run of **configure**, check the contents of the `config.make` file in the `glibc-build` directory for all important details. Note the use of `CC="i686-lfs-gnu-gcc"` to control which binary tools are used and the use of the `-nostdinc` and `-isystem` flags to control the compiler's include search path. These items highlight an important aspect of the Glibc package—it is very self-sufficient in terms of its build machinery and generally does not rely on toolchain defaults.

During the second pass of Binutils, we are able to utilize the `--with-lib-path` **configure** switch to control **ld**'s library search path.

For the second pass of GCC, its sources also need to be modified to tell GCC to use the new dynamic linker. Failure to do so will result in the GCC programs themselves having the name of the dynamic linker from the host system's `/lib` directory embedded into them, which would defeat the goal of getting away from the host. From this point onwards, the core toolchain is self-contained and self-hosted. The remainder of the Chapter 5 packages all build against the new Glibc in `/tools`.



Upon entering the chroot environment in Chapter 6, the first major package to be installed is Glibc, due to its self-sufficient nature mentioned above. Once this Glibc is installed into `/usr`, we will perform a quick changeover of the toolchain defaults, and then proceed in building the rest of the target LFS system.

## 5.3. General Compilation Instructions

When building packages there are several assumptions made within the instructions:

- Several of the packages are patched before compilation, but only when the patch is needed to circumvent a problem. A patch is often needed in both this and the next chapter, but sometimes in only one or the other. Therefore, do not be concerned if instructions for a downloaded patch seem to be missing. Warning messages about *offset* or *fuzz* may also be encountered when applying a patch. Do not worry about these warnings, as the patch was still successfully applied.
- During the compilation of most packages, there will be several warnings that scroll by on the screen. These are normal and can safely be ignored. These warnings are as they appear—warnings about deprecated, but not invalid, use of the C or C++ syntax. C standards change fairly often, and some packages still use the older standard. This is not a problem, but does prompt the warning.
- Check one last time that the LFS environment variable is set up properly:

```
echo $LFS
```

Make sure the output shows the path to the LFS partition's mount point, which is `/mnt/lfs`, using our example.

- Finally, two last important items must be emphasized:



### Important

The build instructions assume that the Host System Requirements, including symbolic links, have been set properly:

- **bash** is the shell in use.
- **sh** is a symbolic link to **bash**.
- `/usr/bin/awk` is a symbolic link to **gawk**.
- `/usr/bin/yacc` is a symbolic link to **bison** or a small script that executes bison.



### Important

To re-emphasize the build process:

1. Place all the sources and patches in a directory that will be accessible from the chroot environment such as `/mnt/lfs/sources/`. Do *not* put sources in `/mnt/lfs/tools/`.
2. Change to the sources directory.
3. For each package:
  - a. Using the **tar** program, extract the package to be built. In Chapter 5, ensure you are the *lfs* user when extracting the package.
  - b. Change to the directory created when the package was extracted.
  - c. Follow the book's instructions for building the package.
  - d. Change back to the sources directory.
  - e. Delete the extracted source directory and any `<package>-build` directories that were created in the build process unless instructed otherwise.

## 5.4. Binutils-2.24 - Pass 1

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 404 MB

### 5.4.1. Installation of Cross Binutils



#### Note

Go back and re-read the notes in the previous section. Understanding the notes labeled important will save you a lot of problems later.

It is important that Binutils be the first package compiled because both Glibc and GCC perform various tests on the available linker and assembler to determine which of their own features to enable.

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```



#### Note

In order for the SBU values listed in the rest of the book to be of any use, measure the time it takes to build this package from the configuration, up to and including the first install. To achieve this easily, wrap the commands in a **time** command like this: **time { ./configure ... && ... && make install; }**.



#### Note

The approximate build SBU values and required disk space in Chapter 5 does not include test suite data.

Now prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../binutils-2.24/configure \
--prefix=/tools           \
--with-sysroot=$LFS       \
--with-lib-path=/tools/lib \
--target=$LFS_TGT         \
--disable-nls             \
--disable-werror
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--prefix=/tools*

This tells the configure script to prepare to install the Binutils programs in the `/tools` directory.

*--with-sysroot=\$LFS*

For cross compilation, this tells the build system to look in `$LFS` for the target system libraries as needed.

*--with-lib-path=/tools/lib*

This specifies which library path the linker should be configured to use.

```
--target=$LFS_TGT
```

Because the machine description in the `LFS_TGT` variable is slightly different than the value returned by the `config.guess` script, this switch will tell the `configure` script to adjust Binutils's build system for building a cross linker.

```
--disable-nls
```

This disables internationalization as `i18n` is not needed for the temporary tools.

```
--disable-werror
```

This prevents the build from stopping in the event that there are warnings from the host's compiler.

Continue with compiling the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. Ordinarily we would now run the test suite, but at this early stage the test suite framework (Tcl, Expect, and DejaGNU) is not yet in place. The benefits of running the tests at this point are minimal since the programs from this first pass will soon be replaced by those from the second.

If building on `x86_64`, create a symlink to ensure the sanity of the toolchain:

```
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64) mkdir -v /tools/lib && ln -sv lib /tools/lib64 ;;
esac
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.13.2, “Contents of Binutils.”

## 5.5. GCC-4.8.2 - Pass 1

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 5.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.4 GB

### 5.5.1. Installation of Cross GCC

GCC now requires the GMP, MPFR and MPC packages. As these packages may not be included in your host distribution, they will be built with GCC. Unpack each package into the GCC source directory and rename the resulting directories so the GCC build procedures will automatically use them:



#### Note

There are frequent misunderstandings about this chapter. The procedures are the same as every other chapter as explained earlier (Package build instructions). First extract the gcc tarball from the sources directory and then change to the directory created. Only then should you proceed with the instructions below.

```
tar -Jxf ../mpfr-3.1.2.tar.xz
mv -v mpfr-3.1.2 mpfr
tar -Jxf ../gmp-5.1.3.tar.xz
mv -v gmp-5.1.3 gmp
tar -zxf ../mpc-1.0.2.tar.gz
mv -v mpc-1.0.2 mpc
```

The following command will change the location of GCC's default dynamic linker to use the one installed in `/tools`. It also removes `/usr/include` from GCC's include search path. Issue:

```
for file in \
$(find gcc/config -name linux64.h -o -name linux.h -o -name sysv4.h)
do
  cp -uv $file{,.orig}
  sed -e 's@/lib\((64\)\)?\((32\)\)?/ld@/tools&@g' \
      -e 's@/usr@/tools@g' $file.orig > $file
  echo '
#undef STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_1
#undef STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_2
#define STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_1 "/tools/lib/"
#define STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_2 ""' >> $file
  touch $file.orig
done
```

In case the above seems hard to follow, let's break it down a bit. First we find all the files under the `gcc/config` directory that are named either `linux.h`, `linux64.h` or `sysv4.h`. For each file found, we copy it to a file of the same name but with an added suffix of `“.orig”`. Then the first `sed` expression prepends `“/tools”` to every instance of `“/lib/ld”`, `“/lib64/ld”` or `“/lib32/ld”`, while the second one replaces hard-coded instances of `“/usr”`. Next, we add our define statements which alter the default startfile prefix to the end of the file. Note that the trailing `“/”` in `“/tools/lib/”` is required. Finally, we use **touch** to update the timestamp on the copied files. When used in conjunction with **cp -u**, this prevents unexpected changes to the original files in case the commands are inadvertently run twice.

GCC doesn't detect stack protection correctly, which causes problems for the build of Glibc-2.19, so fix that by issuing the following command:

```
sed -i '/k prot/agcc_cv_libc_provides_ssp=yes' gcc/configure
```

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Prepare GCC for compilation:

```
../gcc-4.8.2/configure \
  --target=$LFS_TGT \
  --prefix=/tools \
  --with-sysroot=$LFS \
  --with-newlib \
  --without-headers \
  --with-local-prefix=/tools \
  --with-native-system-header-dir=/tools/include \
  --disable-nls \
  --disable-shared \
  --disable-multilib \
  --disable-decimal-float \
  --disable-threads \
  --disable-libatomic \
  --disable-libgomp \
  --disable-libitm \
  --disable-libmudflap \
  --disable-libquadmath \
  --disable-libsanitizer \
  --disable-libssp \
  --disable-libstdc++-v3 \
  --enable-languages=c,c++ \
  --with-mpfr-include=$(pwd)/../gcc-4.8.2/mpfr/src \
  --with-mpfr-lib=$(pwd)/mpfr/src/.libs
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--with-newlib*

Since a working C library is not yet available, this ensures that the `inhibit_libc` constant is defined when building `libgcc`. This prevents the compiling of any code that requires `libc` support.

*--without-headers*

When creating a complete cross-compiler, GCC requires standard headers compatible with the target system. For our purposes these headers will not be needed. This switch prevents GCC from looking for them.

*--with-local-prefix=/tools*

The local prefix is the location in the system that GCC will search for locally installed include files. The default is `/usr/local`. Setting this to `/tools` helps keep the host location of `/usr/local` out of this GCC's search path.

```
--with-native-system-header-dir=/tools/include
```

By default GCC searches `/usr/include` for system headers. In conjunction with the `sysroot` switch, this would translate normally to `$LFS/usr/include`. However the headers that will be installed in the next two sections will go to `$LFS/tools/include`. This switch ensures that `gcc` will find them correctly. In the second pass of GCC, this same switch will ensure that no headers from the host system are found.

```
--disable-shared
```

This switch forces GCC to link its internal libraries statically. We do this to avoid possible issues with the host system.

```
--disable-decimal-float, --disable-threads, --disable-libatomic, --disable-libgomp, --disable-libitm, --disable-libmudflap, --disable-libquadmath, --disable-lsanitizer, --disable-libssp, --disable-libstdc++-v3
```

These switches disable support for the decimal floating point extension, threading, `libatomic`, `libgomp`, `libitm`, `libmudflap`, `libquadmath`, `lsanitizer`, `libssp` and the C++ standard library respectively. These features will fail to compile when building a cross-compiler and are not necessary for the task of cross-compiling the temporary `libc`.

```
--disable-multilib
```

On `x86_64`, LFS does not yet support a multilib configuration. This switch is harmless for `x86`.

```
--enable-languages=c,c++
```

This option ensures that only the C and C++ compilers are built. These are the only languages needed now.

```
--with-mpfr-*
```

These options enable the build system to correctly use the in-tree copy of the MPFR sources.

Compile GCC by running:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. At this point, the test suite would normally be run, but, as mentioned before, the test suite framework is not in place yet. The benefits of running the tests at this point are minimal since the programs from this first pass will soon be replaced.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Using `--disable-shared` means that the `libgcc_eh.a` file isn't created and installed. The Glibc package depends on this library as it uses `-lgcc_eh` within its build system. This dependency can be satisfied by creating a symlink to `libgcc.a`, since that file will end up containing the objects normally contained in `libgcc_eh.a`:

```
ln -sv libgcc.a `$(LFS_TGT-gcc -print-libgcc-file-name | sed 's/libgcc/&_eh/'`
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.17.2, “Contents of GCC.”

## 5.6. Linux-3.13.3 API Headers

The Linux API Headers (in `linux-3.13.3.tar.xz`) expose the kernel's API for use by Glibc.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 584 MB

### 5.6.1. Installation of Linux API Headers

The Linux kernel needs to expose an Application Programming Interface (API) for the system's C library (Glibc in LFS) to use. This is done by way of sanitizing various C header files that are shipped in the Linux kernel source tarball.

Make sure there are no stale files and dependencies lying around from previous activity:

```
make mrproper
```

Now test and extract the user-visible kernel headers from the source. They are placed in an intermediate local directory and copied to the needed location because the extraction process removes any existing files in the target directory.

```
make headers_check  
make INSTALL_HDR_PATH=dest headers_install  
cp -rv dest/include/* /tools/include
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.7.2, “Contents of Linux API Headers.”

## 5.7. Glibc-2.19

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

**Approximate build time:** 4.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 567 MB

### 5.7.1. Installation of Glibc

In some cases, particularly LFS 7.1, the rpc headers were not installed properly. Test to see if they are installed in the host system and install if they are not:

```
if [ ! -r /usr/include/rpc/types.h ]; then
    su -c 'mkdir -pv /usr/include/rpc'
    su -c 'cp -v sunrpc/rpc/*.h /usr/include/rpc'
fi
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../glibc-build
cd ../glibc-build
```

Next, prepare Glibc for compilation:

```
../glibc-2.19/configure \
  --prefix=/tools \
  --host=$LFS_TGT \
  --build=$(../glibc-2.19/scripts/config.guess) \
  --disable-profile \
  --enable-kernel=2.6.32 \
  --with-headers=/tools/include \
  libc_cv_forced_unwind=yes \
  libc_cv_ctors_header=yes \
  libc_cv_c_cleanup=yes
```

#### The meaning of the configure options:

*--host=\$LFS\_TGT, --build=\$(../glibc-2.19/scripts/config.guess)*

The combined effect of these switches is that Glibc's build system configures itself to cross-compile, using the cross-linker and cross-compiler in `/tools`.

*--disable-profile*

This builds the libraries without profiling information. Omit this option if profiling on the temporary tools is necessary.

*--enable-kernel=2.6.32*

This tells Glibc to compile the library with support for 2.6.32 and later Linux kernels. Workarounds for older kernels are not enabled.

*--with-headers=/tools/include*

This tells Glibc to compile itself against the headers recently installed to the tools directory, so that it knows exactly what features the kernel has and can optimize itself accordingly.



```
libc_cv_forced_unwind=yes
```

The linker installed during Section 5.4, “Binutils-2.24 - Pass 1” was cross-compiled and as such cannot be used until Glibc has been installed. This means that the configure test for force-unwind support will fail, as it relies on a working linker. The `libc_cv_forced_unwind=yes` variable is passed in order to inform **configure** that force-unwind support is available without it having to run the test.

```
libc_cv_c_cleanup=yes
```

Similarly, we pass `libc_cv_c_cleanup=yes` through to the **configure** script so that the test is skipped and C cleanup handling support is configured.

```
libc_cv_ctors_header=yes
```

Similarly, we pass `libc_cv_ctors_header=yes` through to the **configure** script so that the test is skipped and gcc constructor support is configured.

During this stage the following warning might appear:

```
configure: WARNING:
*** These auxiliary programs are missing or
*** incompatible versions: msgfmt
*** some features will be disabled.
*** Check the INSTALL file for required versions.
```

The missing or incompatible **msgfmt** program is generally harmless. This **msgfmt** program is part of the Gettext package which the host distribution should provide.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does come with a test suite, however, it cannot be run at this time because we do not have a C++ compiler yet.



### Note

The test suite also requires locale data to be installed in order to run successfully. Locale data provides information to the system regarding such things as the date, time, and currency formats accepted and output by system utilities. If the test suites are not being run in this chapter (as per the recommendation), there is no need to install the locales now. The appropriate locales will be installed in the next chapter. To install the Glibc locales anyway, use instructions from Section 6.9, “Glibc-2.19.”

Install the package:

```
make install
```



## Caution

At this point, it is imperative to stop and ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the new toolchain are working as expected. To perform a sanity check, run the following commands:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
$LFS_TGT-gcc dummy.c
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /tools'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be of the form:

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Note that `/tools/lib`, or `/tools/lib64` for 64-bit machines appears as the prefix of the dynamic linker.

If the output is not shown as above or there was no output at all, then something is wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. This issue must be resolved before continuing on.

Once all is well, clean up the test files:

```
rm -v dummy.c a.out
```



## Note

Building Binutils in the section after next will serve as an additional check that the toolchain has been built properly. If Binutils fails to build, it is an indication that something has gone wrong with the previous Binutils, GCC, or Glibc installations.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.9.4, “Contents of Glibc.”

## 5.8. Libstdc++-4.8.2

Libstdc++ is the standard C++ library. It is needed for the correct operation of the g++ compiler.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 734 MB

### 5.8.1. Installation of Target Libstdc++



#### Note

Libstdc++ is part of the GCC sources. You should first unpack the GCC tarball and change to the `gcc-4.8.2` directory.

Create a directory for Libstdc++ and enter it:

```
mkdir -pv ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Prepare Libstdc++ for compilation:

```
../gcc-4.8.2/libstdc++-v3/configure \
  --host=$LFS_TGT                \
  --prefix=/tools                \
  --disable-multilib             \
  --disable-shared               \
  --disable-nls                  \
  --disable-libstdcxx-threads   \
  --disable-libstdcxx-pch       \
  --with-gxx-include-dir=/tools/$LFS_TGT/include/c++/4.8.2
```

The meaning of the configure options:

`--host=...`

Indicates to use the cross compiler we have just built instead of the one in `/usr/bin`.

`--disable-libstdcxx-threads`

Since we have not built the thread C library, the C++ one cannot be built as well.

`--disable-libstdcxx-pch`

This switch prevents the installation of precompiled include files, which are not needed at this stage.

`--with-gxx-include-dir=/tools/include/c++/4.8.2`

This is the location where the standard include files are searched by the C++ compiler. In a normal build, this information is automatically passed to the Libstdc++ **configure** options from the toplevel directory. In our case, this information must be explicitly given.

Compile libstdc++ by running:

```
make
```

Install the library:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.17.2, “Contents of GCC.”

## 5.9. Binutils-2.24 - Pass 2

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 417 MB

### 5.9.1. Installation of Binutils

Create a separate build directory again:

```
mkdir -v ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
CC=$LFS_TGT-gcc          \
AR=$LFS_TGT-ar          \
RANLIB=$LFS_TGT-ranlib  \
../binutils-2.24/configure \
  --prefix=/tools       \
  --disable-nls         \
  --with-lib-path=/tools/lib \
  --with-sysroot
```

**The meaning of the new configure options:**

```
CC=$LFS_TGT-gcc AR=$LFS_TGT-ar RANLIB=$LFS_TGT-ranlib
```

Because this is really a native build of Binutils, setting these variables ensures that the build system uses the cross-compiler and associated tools instead of the ones on the host system.

```
--with-lib-path=/tools/lib
```

This tells the configure script to specify the library search path during the compilation of Binutils, resulting in `/tools/lib` being passed to the linker. This prevents the linker from searching through library directories on the host.

```
--with-sysroot
```

The `sysroot` feature enables the linker to find shared objects which are required by other shared objects explicitly included on the linker's command line. Without this, some packages may not build successfully on some hosts.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Now prepare the linker for the “Re-adjusting” phase in the next chapter:

```
make -C ld clean
make -C ld LIB_PATH=/usr/lib:/lib
cp -v ld/ld-new /tools/bin
```

**The meaning of the make parameters:**

*-C ld clean*

This tells the make program to remove all compiled files in the `ld` subdirectory.

*-C ld LIB\_PATH=/usr/lib:/lib*

This option rebuilds everything in the `ld` subdirectory. Specifying the `LIB_PATH` Makefile variable on the command line allows us to override the default value of the temporary tools and point it to the proper final path. The value of this variable specifies the linker's default library search path. This preparation is used in the next chapter.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.13.2, “Contents of Binutils.”

## 5.10. GCC-4.8.2 - Pass 2

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 7.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.8 GB

### 5.10.1. Installation of GCC

Our first build of GCC has installed a couple of internal system headers. Normally one of them, `limits.h` will in turn include the corresponding system `limits.h` header, in this case, `/tools/include/limits.h`. However, at the time of the first build of gcc `/tools/include/limits.h` did not exist, so the internal header that GCC installed is a partial, self-contained file and does not include the extended features of the system header. This was adequate for building the temporary `libc`, but this build of GCC now requires the full internal header. Create a full version of the internal header using a command that is identical to what the GCC build system does in normal circumstances:

```
cat gcc/limitx.h gcc/glimits.h gcc/limity.h > \
  `dirname $(LFS_TGT-gcc -print-libgcc-file-name)`/include-fixed/limits.h
```

For x86 machines, a bootstrap build of GCC uses the `-fomit-frame-pointer` compiler flag. Non-bootstrap builds omit this flag by default, and the goal should be to produce a compiler that is exactly the same as if it were bootstrapped. Apply the following `sed` command to force the build to use the flag:

```
case `uname -m` in
  i?86) sed -i 's/^T_CFLAGS =$/& -fomit-frame-pointer/' gcc/Makefile.in ;;
esac
```

Once again, change the location of GCC's default dynamic linker to use the one installed in `/tools`.

```
for file in \
  $(find gcc/config -name linux64.h -o -name linux.h -o -name sysv4.h)
do
  cp -uv $file{,.orig}
  sed -e 's@/lib\((64)\)\?\(32\)\?/ld@/tools&@g' \
    -e 's@/usr@/tools@g' $file.orig > $file
  echo '
#undef STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_1
#undef STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_2
#define STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_1 "/tools/lib/"
#define STANDARD_STARTFILE_PREFIX_2 "" >> $file
  touch $file.orig
done
```

As in the first build of GCC it requires the GMP, MPFR and MPC packages. Unpack the tarballs and move them into the required directory names:

```
tar -Jxf ../mpfr-3.1.2.tar.xz
mv -v mpfr-3.1.2 mpfr
tar -Jxf ../gmp-5.1.3.tar.xz
mv -v gmp-5.1.3 gmp
tar -zxf ../mpc-1.0.2.tar.gz
mv -v mpc-1.0.2 mpc
```

Create a separate build directory again:

```
mkdir -v ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Before starting to build GCC, remember to unset any environment variables that override the default optimization flags.

Now prepare GCC for compilation:

```
CC=$LFS_TGT-gcc \
CXX=$LFS_TGT-g++ \
AR=$LFS_TGT-ar \
RANLIB=$LFS_TGT-ranlib \
../gcc-4.8.2/configure \
  --prefix=/tools \
  --with-local-prefix=/tools \
  --with-native-system-header-dir=/tools/include \
  --enable-clocale=gnu \
  --enable-shared \
  --enable-threads=posix \
  --enable-__cxa_atexit \
  --enable-languages=c,c++ \
  --disable-libstdcxx-pch \
  --disable-multilib \
  --disable-bootstrap \
  --disable-libgomp \
  --with-mpfr-include=$(pwd)/../gcc-4.8.2/mpfr/src \
  --with-mpfr-lib=$(pwd)/mpfr/src/.libs
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

`--enable-clocale=gnu`

This option ensures the correct locale model is selected for the C++ libraries under all circumstances. If the configure script finds the `de_DE` locale installed, it will select the correct gnu locale model. However, if the `de_DE` locale is not installed, there is the risk of building Application Binary Interface (ABI)-incompatible C++ libraries because the incorrect generic locale model may be selected.

`--enable-threads=posix`

This enables C++ exception handling for multi-threaded code.

`--enable-__cxa_atexit`

This option allows use of `__cxa_atexit`, rather than `atexit`, to register C++ destructors for local statics and global objects. This option is essential for fully standards-compliant handling of destructors. It also affects the C++ ABI, and therefore results in C++ shared libraries and C++ programs that are interoperable with other Linux distributions.

`--enable-languages=c,c++`

This option ensures that both the C and C++ compilers are built.

`--disable-libstdcxx-pch`

Do not build the pre-compiled header (PCH) for `libstdc++`. It takes up a lot of space, and we have no use for it.



`--disable-bootstrap`

For native builds of GCC, the default is to do a "bootstrap" build. This does not just compile GCC, but compiles it several times. It uses the programs compiled in a first round to compile itself a second time, and then again a third time. The second and third iterations are compared to make sure it can reproduce itself flawlessly. This also implies that it was compiled correctly. However, the LFS build method should provide a solid compiler without the need to bootstrap each time.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

As a finishing touch, create a symlink. Many programs and scripts run `cc` instead of `gcc`, which is used to keep programs generic and therefore usable on all kinds of UNIX systems where the GNU C compiler is not always installed. Running `cc` leaves the system administrator free to decide which C compiler to install:

```
ln -sv gcc /tools/bin/cc
```



### Caution

At this point, it is imperative to stop and ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the new toolchain are working as expected. To perform a sanity check, run the following commands:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
cc dummy.c
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /tools'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be of the form:

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Note that `/tools/lib`, or `/tools/lib64` for 64-bit machines appears as the prefix of the dynamic linker.

If the output is not shown as above or there was no output at all, then something is wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. This issue must be resolved before continuing on. First, perform the sanity check again, using `gcc` instead of `cc`. If this works, then the `/tools/bin/cc` symlink is missing. Install the symlink as per above. Next, ensure that the `PATH` is correct. This can be checked by running `echo $PATH` and verifying that `/tools/bin` is at the head of the list. If the `PATH` is wrong it could mean that you are not logged in as user `lfs` or that something went wrong back in Section 4.4, "Setting Up the Environment."

Once all is well, clean up the test files:

```
rm -v dummy.c a.out
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.17.2, "Contents of GCC."

## 5.11. Tcl-8.6.1

The Tcl package contains the Tool Command Language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 55 MB

### 5.11.1. Installation of Tcl

This package and the next three (Expect, DejaGNU, and Check) are installed to support running the test suites for GCC and Binutils and other packages. Installing four packages for testing purposes may seem excessive, but it is very reassuring, if not essential, to know that the most important tools are working properly. Even if the test suites are not run in this chapter (they are not mandatory), these packages are required to run the test suites in Chapter 6.

Prepare Tcl for compilation:

```
cd unix
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Build the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Tcl test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
TZ=UTC make test
```

The Tcl test suite may experience failures under certain host conditions that are not fully understood. Therefore, test suite failures here are not surprising, and are not considered critical. The `TZ=UTC` parameter sets the time zone to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), but only for the duration of the test suite run. This ensures that the clock tests are exercised correctly. Details on the TZ environment variable are provided in Chapter 7.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Make the installed library writable so debugging symbols can be removed later:

```
chmod -v u+w /tools/lib/libtcl8.6.so
```

Install Tcl's headers. The next package, Expect, requires them to build.

```
make install-private-headers
```

Now make a necessary symbolic link:

```
ln -sv tclsh8.6 /tools/bin/tclsh
```

### 5.11.2. Contents of Tcl

**Installed programs:** tclsh (link to tclsh8.6) and tclsh8.6

**Installed library:** libtcl8.6.so, libtclstub8.6.a

## Short Descriptions

<b>tclsh8.6</b>	The Tcl command shell
<b>tclsh</b>	A link to tclsh8.6
libtcl8.6.so	The Tcl library
libtclstub8.6.a	The Tcl Stub library

## 5.12. Expect-5.45

The Expect package contains a program for carrying out scripted dialogues with other interactive programs.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.4 MB

### 5.12.1. Installation of Expect

First, force Expect's configure script to use `/bin/stty` instead of a `/usr/local/bin/stty` it may find on the host system. This will ensure that our test suite tools remain sane for the final builds of our toolchain:

```
cp -v configure{,.orig}
sed 's:/usr/local/bin:/bin:' configure.orig > configure
```

Now prepare Expect for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --with-tcl=/tools/lib \
--with-tclinclude=/tools/include
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

`--with-tcl=/tools/lib`

This ensures that the configure script finds the Tcl installation in the temporary tools location instead of possibly locating an existing one on the host system.

`--with-tclinclude=/tools/include`

This explicitly tells Expect where to find Tcl's internal headers. Using this option avoids conditions where **configure** fails because it cannot automatically discover the location of Tcl's headers.

Build the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Expect test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make test
```

Note that the Expect test suite is known to experience failures under certain host conditions that are not within our control. Therefore, test suite failures here are not surprising and are not considered critical.

Install the package:

```
make SCRIPTS="" install
```

**The meaning of the make parameter:**

`SCRIPTS=""`

This prevents installation of the supplementary Expect scripts, which are not needed.

### 5.12.2. Contents of Expect

**Installed program:** expect

**Installed library:** libexpect-5.45.so

## Short Descriptions

<b>expect</b>	Communicates with other interactive programs according to a script
<code>libexpect-5.45.so</code>	Contains functions that allow Expect to be used as a Tcl extension or to be used directly from C or C++ (without Tcl)

## 5.13. DejaGNU-1.5.1

The DejaGNU package contains a framework for testing other programs.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.1 MB

### 5.13.1. Installation of DejaGNU

Prepare DejaGNU for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Build and install the package:

```
make install
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

### 5.13.2. Contents of DejaGNU

**Installed program:** runtest

#### Short Descriptions

**runtest** A wrapper script that locates the proper **expect** shell and then runs DejaGNU

## 5.14. Check-0.9.12

Check is a unit testing framework for C.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.9 MB

### 5.14.1. Installation of Check

Prepare Check for compilation:

```
PKG_CONFIG= ./configure --prefix=/tools
```

**The meaning of the configure parameter:**

*PKG\_CONFIG=*

This tells the configure script to ignore any pkg-config options that may cause the system to try to link with libraries not in the `/tools` directory.

Build the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Check test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Note that the Check test suite may take a relatively long (up to 4 SBU) time.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 5.14.2. Contents of Check

**Installed program:** checkmk

**Installed library:** libcheck.{a,so}

#### Short Descriptions

**checkmk** Awk script for generating C unit tests for use with the Check unit testing framework

**libcheck.{a,so}** Contains functions that allow Check to be called from a test program

## 5.15. Ncurses-5.9

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 35 MB

### 5.15.1. Installation of Ncurses

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools \
            --with-shared \
            --without-debug \
            --without-ada \
            --enable-widec \
            --enable-overwrite
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--without-ada*

This ensures that Ncurses does not build support for the Ada compiler which may be present on the host but will not be available once we enter the **chroot** environment.

*--enable-overwrite*

This tells Ncurses to install its header files into `/tools/include`, instead of `/tools/include/ncurses`, to ensure that other packages can find the Ncurses headers successfully.

*--enable-widec*

This switch causes wide-character libraries (e.g., `libncursesw.so.5.9`) to be built instead of normal ones (e.g., `libncurses.so.5.9`). These wide-character libraries are usable in both multibyte and traditional 8-bit locales, while normal libraries work properly only in 8-bit locales. Wide-character and normal libraries are source-compatible, but not binary-compatible.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package has a test suite, but it can only be run after the package has been installed. The tests reside in the `test/` directory. See the `README` file in that directory for further details.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.21.2, “Contents of Ncurses.”



## 5.16. Bash-4.2

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 48 MB

### 5.16.1. Installation of Bash

First, apply the following patch to fix various bugs that have been addressed upstream:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bash-4.2-fixes-12.patch
```

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --without-bash-malloc
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--without-bash-malloc*

This option turns off the use of Bash's memory allocation (`malloc`) function which is known to cause segmentation faults. By turning this option off, Bash will use the `malloc` functions from Glibc which are more stable.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Bash test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make tests
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Make a link for the programs that use `sh` for a shell:

```
ln -sv bash /tools/bin/sh
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.36.2, “Contents of Bash.”

## 5.17. Bzip2-1.0.6

The Bzip2 package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. Compressing text files with **bzip2** yields a much better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip**.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 5.7 MB

### 5.17.1. Installation of Bzip2

The Bzip2 package does not contain a **configure** script. Compile and test it with:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make PREFIX=/tools install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.19.2, “Contents of Bzip2.”

## 5.18. Coreutils-8.22

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

**Approximate build time:** 0.8 SBU

**Required disk space:** 133 MB

### 5.18.1. Installation of Coreutils

Prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --enable-install-program=hostname
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--enable-install-program=hostname
```

This enables the **hostname** binary to be built and installed – it is disabled by default but is required by the Perl test suite.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Coreutils test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make RUN_EXPENSIVE_TESTS=yes check
```

The *RUN\_EXPENSIVE\_TESTS=yes* parameter tells the test suite to run several additional tests that are considered relatively expensive (in terms of CPU power and memory usage) on some platforms, but generally are not a problem on Linux.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.29.2, “Contents of Coreutils.”

## 5.19. Diffutils-3.3

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.5 MB

### 5.19.1. Installation of Diffutils

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Diffutils test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.46.2, “Contents of Diffutils.”

## 5.20. File-5.17

The File package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 12.4 MB

### 5.20.1. Installation of File

Prepare File for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the File test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.12.2, “Contents of File.”

## 5.21. Findutils-4.4.2

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 27 MB

### 5.21.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Findutils test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.48.2, “Contents of Findutils.”

## 5.22. Gawk-4.1.0

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 30 MB

### 5.22.1. Installation of Gawk

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Gawk test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.47.2, “Contents of Gawk.”

## 5.23. Gettext-0.18.3.2

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 119 MB

### 5.23.1. Installation of Gettext

For our temporary set of tools, we only need to build and install three programs from Gettext.

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
cd gettext-tools
EMACS="no" ./configure --prefix=/tools --disable-shared
```

**The meaning of the configure option:**

*EMACS="no"*

This prevents the configure script from determining where to install Emacs Lisp files as the test is known to hang on some hosts.

*--disable-shared*

We do not need to install any of the shared Gettext libraries at this time, therefore there is no need to build them.

Compile the package:

```
make -C gnulib-lib
make -C src msgfmt
make -C src msgmerge
make -C src xgettext
```

As only three programs have been compiled, it is not possible to run the test suite without compiling additional support libraries from the Gettext package. It is therefore not recommended to attempt to run the test suite at this stage.

Install the **msgfmt**, **msgmerge** and **xgettext** programs:

```
cp -v src/{msgfmt,msgmerge,xgettext} /tools/bin
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.49.2, “Contents of Gettext.”



## 5.24. Grep-2.16

The Grep package contains programs for searching through files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 21 MB

### 5.24.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Grep test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.34.2, “Contents of Grep.”

## 5.25. Gzip-1.6

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 10 MB

### 5.25.1. Installation of Gzip

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Gzip test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.56.2, “Contents of Gzip.”

## 5.26. M4-1.4.17

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 30 MB

### 5.26.1. Installation of M4

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the M4 test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.31.2, “Contents of M4.”

## 5.27. Make-4.0

The Make package contains a program for compiling packages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 11.2 MB

### 5.27.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --without-guile
```

**The meaning of the configure option:**

*--without-guile*

This ensures that Make-4.0 won't link against Guile libraries, which may be present on the host system, but won't be available within the **chroot** environment in the next chapter.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Make test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.61.2, “Contents of Make.”

## 5.28. Patch-2.7.1

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the **diff** program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.4 MB

### 5.28.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Patch test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.62.2, “Contents of Patch.”

## 5.29. Perl-5.18.2

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

**Approximate build time:** 1.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 235 MB

### 5.29.1. Installation of Perl

First apply the following patch to adapt some hard-wired paths to the C library:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../perl-5.18.2-libc-1.patch
```

Prepare Perl for compilation:

```
sh Configure -des -Dprefix=/tools
```

Build the package:

```
make
```

Although Perl comes with a test suite, it would be better to wait until it is installed in the next chapter.

Only a few of the utilities and libraries, need to be installed at this time:

```
cp -v perl cpan/podlators/pod2man /tools/bin
mkdir -pv /tools/lib/perl5/5.18.2
cp -Rv lib/* /tools/lib/perl5/5.18.2
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.42.2, “Contents of Perl.”

## 5.30. Sed-4.2.2

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 10.5 MB

### 5.30.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Sed test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.18.2, “Contents of Sed.”

## 5.31. Tar-1.27.1

The Tar package contains an archiving program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 20.6 MB

### 5.31.1. Installation of Tar

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Tar test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.68.2, “Contents of Tar.”



## 5.32. Texinfo-5.2

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 94 MB

### 5.32.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Texinfo test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.69.2, “Contents of Texinfo.”

## 5.33. Util-linux-2.24.1

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 89 MB

### 5.33.1. Installation of Util-linux

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools \
            --disable-makeinstall-chown \
            --without-systemdsystemunitdir \
            PKG_CONFIG=""
```

**The meaning of the configure option:**

*--disable-makeinstall-chown*

This switch disables using the **chown** command during installation. This is not needed when installing into the /tools directory and avoids the necessity of installing as root.

*--without-systemdsystemunitdir*

On systems that use systemd, the package tries to install a systemd specific file to a non-existent directory in /tools. This switch disables the unnecessary action.

PKG\_CONFIG=""

Setting this environment variable prevents adding unneeded features that may be available on the host. Note that the location shown for setting this environment variable is different from other LFS sections where variables are set preceding the command. This location is shown to demonstrate an alternative way of setting an environment variable when using configure.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

## 5.34. Xz-5.0.5

The Xz package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides capabilities for the lzma and the newer xz compression formats. Compressing text files with **xz** yields a better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip** or **bzip2** commands.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 16.3 MB

### 5.34.1. Installation of Xz-Uutils

Prepare Xz for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Xz test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.53.2, “Contents of Xz.”

## 5.35. Stripping

The steps in this section are optional, but if the LFS partition is rather small, it is beneficial to learn that unnecessary items can be removed. The executables and libraries built so far contain about 70 MB of unneeded debugging symbols. Remove those symbols with:

```
strip --strip-debug /tools/lib/*
strip --strip-unnneeded /tools/{,s}bin/*
```

These commands will skip a number of files, reporting that it does not recognize their file format. Most of these are scripts instead of binaries.

Take care *not* to use `--strip-unnneeded` on the libraries. The static ones would be destroyed and the toolchain packages would need to be built all over again.

To save more, remove the documentation:

```
rm -rf /tools/{,share}/{info,man,doc}
```

At this point, you should have at least 3 GB of free space in `$LFS` that can be used to build and install Glibc and Gcc in the next phase. If you can build and install Glibc, you can build and install the rest too.

## 5.36. Changing Ownership



### Note

The commands in the remainder of this book must be performed while logged in as user `root` and no longer as user `lfs`. Also, double check that `$LFS` is set in `root`'s environment.

Currently, the `$LFS/tools` directory is owned by the user `lfs`, a user that exists only on the host system. If the `$LFS/tools` directory is kept as is, the files are owned by a user ID without a corresponding account. This is dangerous because a user account created later could get this same user ID and would own the `$LFS/tools` directory and all the files therein, thus exposing these files to possible malicious manipulation.

To avoid this issue, you could add the `lfs` user to the new LFS system later when creating the `/etc/passwd` file, taking care to assign it the same user and group IDs as on the host system. Better yet, change the ownership of the `$LFS/tools` directory to user `root` by running the following command:

```
chown -R root:root $LFS/tools
```

Although the `$LFS/tools` directory can be deleted once the LFS system has been finished, it can be retained to build additional LFS systems *of the same book version*. How best to backup `$LFS/tools` is a matter of personal preference.



### Caution

If you intend to keep the temporary tools for use in building future LFS systems, *now* is the time to back them up. Subsequent commands in chapter 6 will alter the tools currently in place, rendering them useless for future builds.

## **Part III. Building the LFS System**

# Chapter 6. Installing Basic System Software

## 6.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we enter the building site and start constructing the LFS system in earnest. That is, we chroot into the temporary mini Linux system, make a few final preparations, and then begin installing the packages.

The installation of this software is straightforward. Although in many cases the installation instructions could be made shorter and more generic, we have opted to provide the full instructions for every package to minimize the possibilities for mistakes. The key to learning what makes a Linux system work is to know what each package is used for and why you (or the system) may need it.

We do not recommend using optimizations. They can make a program run slightly faster, but they may also cause compilation difficulties and problems when running the program. If a package refuses to compile when using optimization, try to compile it without optimization and see if that fixes the problem. Even if the package does compile when using optimization, there is the risk it may have been compiled incorrectly because of the complex interactions between the code and build tools. Also note that the `-march` and `-mtune` options using values not specified in the book have not been tested. This may cause problems with the toolchain packages (Binutils, GCC and Glibc). The small potential gains achieved in using compiler optimizations are often outweighed by the risks. First-time builders of LFS are encouraged to build without custom optimizations. The subsequent system will still run very fast and be stable at the same time.

The order that packages are installed in this chapter needs to be strictly followed to ensure that no program accidentally acquires a path referring to `/tools` hard-wired into it. For the same reason, do not compile separate packages in parallel. Compiling in parallel may save time (especially on dual-CPU machines), but it could result in a program containing a hard-wired path to `/tools`, which will cause the program to stop working when that directory is removed.

Before the installation instructions, each installation page provides information about the package, including a concise description of what it contains, approximately how long it will take to build, and how much disk space is required during this building process. Following the installation instructions, there is a list of programs and libraries (along with brief descriptions of these) that the package installs.



### Note

The SBU values and required disk space includes test suite data for all applicable packages in Chapter 6.

## 6.2. Preparing Virtual Kernel File Systems

Various file systems exported by the kernel are used to communicate to and from the kernel itself. These file systems are virtual in that no disk space is used for them. The content of the file systems resides in memory.

Begin by creating directories onto which the file systems will be mounted:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS/{dev,proc,sys,run}
```

## 6.2.1. Creating Initial Device Nodes

When the kernel boots the system, it requires the presence of a few device nodes, in particular the `console` and `null` devices. The device nodes must be created on the hard disk so that they are available before `udev` has been started, and additionally when Linux is started with `init=/bin/bash`. Create the devices by running the following commands:

```
mknod -m 600 $LFS/dev/console c 5 1
mknod -m 666 $LFS/dev/null c 1 3
```

## 6.2.2. Mounting and Populating /dev

The recommended method of populating the `/dev` directory with devices is to mount a virtual filesystem (such as `tmpfs`) on the `/dev` directory, and allow the devices to be created dynamically on that virtual filesystem as they are detected or accessed. Device creation is generally done during the boot process by Udev. Since this new system does not yet have Udev and has not yet been booted, it is necessary to mount and populate `/dev` manually. This is accomplished by bind mounting the host system's `/dev` directory. A bind mount is a special type of mount that allows you to create a mirror of a directory or mount point to some other location. Use the following command to achieve this:

```
mount -v --bind /dev $LFS/dev
```

## 6.2.3. Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems

Now mount the remaining virtual kernel filesystems:

```
mount -vt devpts devpts $LFS/dev/pts -o gid=5,mode=620
mount -vt proc proc $LFS/proc
mount -vt sysfs sysfs $LFS/sys
mount -vt tmpfs tmpfs $LFS/run
```

The meaning of the mount options for `devpts`:

*gid=5*

This ensures that all `devpts`-created device nodes are owned by group ID 5. This is the ID we will use later on for the `tty` group. We use the group ID instead of a name, since the host system might use a different ID for its `tty` group.

*mode=0620*

This ensures that all `devpts`-created device nodes have mode 0620 (user readable and writable, group writable). Together with the option above, this ensures that `devpts` will create device nodes that meet the requirements of `grantpt()`, meaning the Glibc `pt_chown` helper binary (which is not installed by default) is not necessary.

In some host systems, `/dev/shm` is a symbolic link to `/run/shm`. The `/run tmpfs` was mounted above so in this case only a directory needs to be created.

```
if [ -h $LFS/dev/shm ]; then
    mkdir -pv $LFS/$(readlink $LFS/dev/shm)
fi
```

## 6.3. Package Management

Package Management is an often requested addition to the LFS Book. A Package Manager allows tracking the installation of files making it easy to remove and upgrade packages. As well as the binary and library files, a package manager will handle the installation of configuration files. Before you begin to wonder, NO—this section will not talk

about nor recommend any particular package manager. What it provides is a roundup of the more popular techniques and how they work. The perfect package manager for you may be among these techniques or may be a combination of two or more of these techniques. This section briefly mentions issues that may arise when upgrading packages.

Some reasons why no package manager is mentioned in LFS or BLFS include:

- Dealing with package management takes the focus away from the goals of these books—teaching how a Linux system is built.
- There are multiple solutions for package management, each having its strengths and drawbacks. Including one that satisfies all audiences is difficult.

There are some hints written on the topic of package management. Visit the *Hints Project* and see if one of them fits your need.

### 6.3.1. Upgrade Issues

A Package Manager makes it easy to upgrade to newer versions when they are released. Generally the instructions in the LFS and BLFS Book can be used to upgrade to the newer versions. Here are some points that you should be aware of when upgrading packages, especially on a running system.

- If one of the toolchain packages (Glibc, GCC or Binutils) needs to be upgraded to a newer minor version, it is safer to rebuild LFS. Though you *may* be able to get by rebuilding all the packages in their dependency order, we do not recommend it. For example, if glibc-2.2.x needs to be updated to glibc-2.3.x, it is safer to rebuild. For micro version updates, a simple reinstallation usually works, but is not guaranteed. For example, upgrading from glibc-2.3.4 to glibc-2.3.5 will not usually cause any problems.
- If a package containing a shared library is updated, and if the name of the library changes, then all the packages dynamically linked to the library need to be recompiled to link against the newer library. (Note that there is no correlation between the package version and the name of the library.) For example, consider a package foo-1.2.3 that installs a shared library with name `libfoo.so.1`. Say you upgrade the package to a newer version foo-1.2.4 that installs a shared library with name `libfoo.so.2`. In this case, all packages that are dynamically linked to `libfoo.so.1` need to be recompiled to link against `libfoo.so.2`. Note that you should not remove the previous libraries until the dependent packages are recompiled.

### 6.3.2. Package Management Techniques

The following are some common package management techniques. Before making a decision on a package manager, do some research on the various techniques, particularly the drawbacks of the particular scheme.

#### 6.3.2.1. It is All in My Head!

Yes, this is a package management technique. Some folks do not find the need for a package manager because they know the packages intimately and know what files are installed by each package. Some users also do not need any package management because they plan on rebuilding the entire system when a package is changed.

#### 6.3.2.2. Install in Separate Directories

This is a simplistic package management that does not need any extra package to manage the installations. Each package is installed in a separate directory. For example, package foo-1.1 is installed in `/usr/pkg/foo-1.1` and a symlink is made from `/usr/pkg/foo` to `/usr/pkg/foo-1.1`. When installing a new version foo-1.2, it is installed in `/usr/pkg/foo-1.2` and the previous symlink is replaced by a symlink to the new version.



Environment variables such as `PATH`, `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`, `MANPATH`, `INFOPATH` and `CPPFLAGS` need to be expanded to include `/usr/pkg/foo`. For more than a few packages, this scheme becomes unmanageable.

### 6.3.2.3. Symlink Style Package Management

This is a variation of the previous package management technique. Each package is installed similar to the previous scheme. But instead of making the symlink, each file is symlinked into the `/usr` hierarchy. This removes the need to expand the environment variables. Though the symlinks can be created by the user to automate the creation, many package managers have been written using this approach. A few of the popular ones include `Stow`, `Epkg`, `Graft`, and `Depot`.

The installation needs to be faked, so that the package thinks that it is installed in `/usr` though in reality it is installed in the `/usr/pkg` hierarchy. Installing in this manner is not usually a trivial task. For example, consider that you are installing a package `libfoo-1.1`. The following instructions may not install the package properly:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1
make
make install
```

The installation will work, but the dependent packages may not link to `libfoo` as you would expect. If you compile a package that links against `libfoo`, you may notice that it is linked to `/usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1/lib/libfoo.so.1` instead of `/usr/lib/libfoo.so.1` as you would expect. The correct approach is to use the `DESTDIR` strategy to fake installation of the package. This approach works as follows:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
make
make DESTDIR=/usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1 install
```

Most packages support this approach, but there are some which do not. For the non-compliant packages, you may either need to manually install the package, or you may find that it is easier to install some problematic packages into `/opt`.

### 6.3.2.4. Timestamp Based

In this technique, a file is timestamped before the installation of the package. After the installation, a simple use of the `find` command with the appropriate options can generate a log of all the files installed after the timestamp file was created. A package manager written with this approach is `install-log`.

Though this scheme has the advantage of being simple, it has two drawbacks. If, during installation, the files are installed with any timestamp other than the current time, those files will not be tracked by the package manager. Also, this scheme can only be used when one package is installed at a time. The logs are not reliable if two packages are being installed on two different consoles.

### 6.3.2.5. Tracing Installation Scripts

In this approach, the commands that the installation scripts perform are recorded. There are two techniques that one can use:

The `LD_PRELOAD` environment variable can be set to point to a library to be preloaded before installation. During installation, this library tracks the packages that are being installed by attaching itself to various executables such as `cp`, `install`, `mv` and tracking the system calls that modify the filesystem. For this approach to work, all the executables need to be dynamically linked without the `suid` or `sgid` bit. Preloading the library may cause some unwanted side-effects during installation. Therefore, it is advised that one performs some tests to ensure that the package manager does not break anything and logs all the appropriate files.

The second technique is to use **strace**, which logs all system calls made during the execution of the installation scripts.

### 6.3.2.6. Creating Package Archives

In this scheme, the package installation is faked into a separate tree as described in the Symlink style package management. After the installation, a package archive is created using the installed files. This archive is then used to install the package either on the local machine or can even be used to install the package on other machines.

This approach is used by most of the package managers found in the commercial distributions. Examples of package managers that follow this approach are RPM (which, incidentally, is required by the *Linux Standard Base Specification*), pkg-utils, Debian's apt, and Gentoo's Portage system. A hint describing how to adopt this style of package management for LFS systems is located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/fakeroot.txt>.

Creation of package files that include dependency information is complex and is beyond the scope of LFS.

Slackware uses a **tar** based system for package archives. This system purposely does not handle package dependencies as more complex package managers do. For details of Slackware package management, see <http://www.slackbook.org/html/package-management.html>.

### 6.3.2.7. User Based Management

This scheme, unique to LFS, was devised by Matthias Benkmann, and is available from the *Hints Project*. In this scheme, each package is installed as a separate user into the standard locations. Files belonging to a package are easily identified by checking the user ID. The features and shortcomings of this approach are too complex to describe in this section. For the details please see the hint at [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/more\\_control\\_and\\_pkg\\_man.txt](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/more_control_and_pkg_man.txt).

## 6.3.3. Deploying LFS on Multiple Systems

One of the advantages of an LFS system is that there are no files that depend on the position of files on a disk system. Cloning an LFS build to another computer with an architecture similar to the base system is as simple as using **tar** on the LFS partition that contains the root directory (about 250MB uncompressed for a base LFS build), copying that file via network transfer or CD-ROM to the new system and expanding it. From that point, a few configuration files will have to be changed. Configuration files that may need to be updated include: `/etc/hosts`, `/etc/fstab`, `/etc/passwd`, `/etc/group`, `/etc/shadow`, `/etc/ld.so.conf`, `/etc/sysconfig/rc.site`, `/etc/sysconfig/network`, and `/etc/sysconfig/ifconfig.eth0`.

A custom kernel may need to be built for the new system depending on differences in system hardware and the original kernel configuration.

Finally the new system has to be made bootable via Section 8.4, “Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process”.

## 6.4. Entering the Chroot Environment

It is time to enter the chroot environment to begin building and installing the final LFS system. As user `root`, run the following command to enter the realm that is, at the moment, populated with only the temporary tools:

```
chroot "$LFS" /tools/bin/env -i \
  HOME=/root \
  TERM="$TERM" \
  PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin:/tools/bin \
  /tools/bin/bash --login +h
```

The `-i` option given to the `env` command will clear all variables of the chroot environment. After that, only the `HOME`, `TERM`, `PS1`, and `PATH` variables are set again. The `TERM=$TERM` construct will set the `TERM` variable inside chroot to the same value as outside chroot. This variable is needed for programs like `vim` and `less` to operate properly. If other variables are needed, such as `CFLAGS` or `CXXFLAGS`, this is a good place to set them again.

From this point on, there is no need to use the `LFS` variable anymore, because all work will be restricted to the `LFS` file system. This is because the Bash shell is told that `$LFS` is now the root (`/`) directory.

Notice that `/tools/bin` comes last in the `PATH`. This means that a temporary tool will no longer be used once its final version is installed. This occurs when the shell does not “remember” the locations of executed binaries—for this reason, hashing is switched off by passing the `+h` option to `bash`.

Note that the `bash` prompt will say `I have no name!` This is normal because the `/etc/passwd` file has not been created yet.



### Note

It is important that all the commands throughout the remainder of this chapter and the following chapters are run from within the chroot environment. If you leave this environment for any reason (rebooting for example), ensure that the virtual kernel filesystems are mounted as explained in Section 6.2.2, “Mounting and Populating `/dev`” and Section 6.2.3, “Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems” and enter chroot again before continuing with the installation.

## 6.5. Creating Directories

It is time to create some structure in the `LFS` file system. Create a standard directory tree by issuing the following commands:

```
mkdir -pv /{bin,boot,etc/{opt,sysconfig},home,lib,mnt,opt}
mkdir -pv /{media/{floppy,cdrom},sbin,srv,var}
install -dv -m 0750 /root
install -dv -m 1777 /tmp /var/tmp
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}{bin,include,lib,sbin,src}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}share/{color,dict,doc,info,locale,man}
mkdir -v /usr/{,local/}share/{misc,terminfo,zoneinfo}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}share/man/man{1..8}
for dir in /usr /usr/local; do
    ln -sv share/{man,doc,info} $dir
done
case $(uname -m) in
    x86_64) ln -sv lib /lib64 && ln -sv lib /usr/lib64 && ln -sv lib /usr/local/lib64
esac
mkdir -v /var/{log,mail,spool}
ln -sv /run /var/run
ln -sv /run/lock /var/lock
mkdir -pv /var/{opt,cache,lib/{color,misc,locate},local}
```

Directories are, by default, created with permission mode `755`, but this is not desirable for all directories. In the commands above, two changes are made—one to the home directory of user `root`, and another to the directories for temporary files.

The first mode change ensures that not just anybody can enter the `/root` directory—the same as a normal user would do with his or her home directory. The second mode change makes sure that any user can write to the `/tmp` and `/var/tmp` directories, but cannot remove another user's files from them. The latter is prohibited by the so-called “sticky bit,” the highest bit (1) in the 1777 bit mask.

### 6.5.1. FHS Compliance Note

The directory tree is based on the Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS) (available at <http://www.pathname.com/fhs/>). In addition to the FHS, we create compatibility symlinks for the `man`, `doc`, and `info` directories since many packages still try to install their documentation into `/usr/<directory>` or `/usr/local/<directory>` as opposed to `/usr/share/<directory>` or `/usr/local/share/<directory>`. The FHS also stipulates the existence of `/usr/local/games` and `/usr/share/games`. The FHS is not precise as to the structure of the `/usr/local/share` subdirectory, so we create only the directories that are needed. However, feel free to create these directories if you prefer to conform more strictly to the FHS.

## 6.6. Creating Essential Files and Symlinks

Some programs use hard-wired paths to programs which do not exist yet. In order to satisfy these programs, create a number of symbolic links which will be replaced by real files throughout the course of this chapter after the software has been installed:

```
ln -sv /tools/bin/{bash,cat,echo,pwd,stty} /bin
ln -sv /tools/bin/perl /usr/bin
ln -sv /tools/lib/libgcc_s.so{,.1} /usr/lib
ln -sv /tools/lib/libstdc++.so{,.6} /usr/lib
sed 's/tools/usr/' /tools/lib/libstdc++.la > /usr/lib/libstdc++.la
ln -sv bash /bin/sh
```

Historically, Linux maintains a list of the mounted file systems in the file `/etc/mtab`. Modern kernels maintain this list internally and exposes it to the user via the `/proc` filesystem. To satisfy utilities that expect the presence of `/etc/mtab`, create the following symbolic link:

```
ln -sv /proc/self/mounts /etc/mtab
```

In order for user `root` to be able to login and for the name “`root`” to be recognized, there must be relevant entries in the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` files.

Create the `/etc/passwd` file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/passwd << "EOF"
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/dev/null:/bin/false
daemon:x:6:6:daemon:/dev/null:/bin/false
messagebus:x:18:18:D-Bus Message Daemon User:/var/run/dbus:/bin/false
nobody:x:99:99:Unprivileged User:/dev/null:/bin/false
EOF
```

The actual password for `root` (the “`x`” used here is just a placeholder) will be set later.

Create the `/etc/group` file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
sys:x:2:
kmem:x:3:
tape:x:4:
tty:x:5:
daemon:x:6:
floppy:x:7:
disk:x:8:
lp:x:9:
dialout:x:10:
audio:x:11:
video:x:12:
utmp:x:13:
usb:x:14:
cdrom:x:15:
adm:x:16:
messagebus:x:18:
systemd-journal:x:23:
mail:x:34:
nogroup:x:99:
users:x:100:
EOF
```

The created groups are not part of any standard—they are groups decided on in part by the requirements of the Udev configuration in this chapter, and in part by common convention employed by a number of existing Linux distributions. The Linux Standard Base (LSB, available at <http://www.linuxbase.org>) recommends only that, besides the group `root` with a Group ID (GID) of 0, a group `bin` with a GID of 1 be present. All other group names and GIDs can be chosen freely by the system administrator since well-written programs do not depend on GID numbers, but rather use the group's name.

To remove the “I have no name!” prompt, start a new shell. Since a full Glibc was installed in Chapter 5 and the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` files have been created, user name and group name resolution will now work:

```
exec /tools/bin/bash --login +h
```

Note the use of the `+h` directive. This tells `bash` not to use its internal path hashing. Without this directive, `bash` would remember the paths to binaries it has executed. To ensure the use of the newly compiled binaries as soon as they are installed, the `+h` directive will be used for the duration of this chapter.

The `login`, `agetty`, and `init` programs (and others) use a number of log files to record information such as who was logged into the system and when. However, these programs will not write to the log files if they do not already exist. Initialize the log files and give them proper permissions:

```
touch /var/log/{btmp,lastlog,wtmp}
chgrp -v utmp /var/log/lastlog
chmod -v 664 /var/log/lastlog
chmod -v 600 /var/log/btmp
```

The `/var/log/wtmp` file records all logins and logouts. The `/var/log/lastlog` file records when each user last logged in. The `/var/log/btmp` file records the bad login attempts.

**Note**

The `/run/utmp` file records the users that are currently logged in. This file is created dynamically in the boot scripts.

## 6.7. Linux-3.13.3 API Headers

The Linux API Headers (in linux-3.13.3.tar.xz) expose the kernel's API for use by Glibc.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 588 MB

### 6.7.1. Installation of Linux API Headers

The Linux kernel needs to expose an Application Programming Interface (API) for the system's C library (Glibc in LFS) to use. This is done by way of sanitizing various C header files that are shipped in the Linux kernel source tarball.

Make sure there are no stale files and dependencies lying around from previous activity:

```
make mrproper
```

Now test and extract the user-visible kernel headers from the source. They are placed in an intermediate local directory and copied to the needed location because the extraction process removes any existing files in the target directory. There are also some hidden files used by the kernel developers and not needed by LFS that are removed from the intermediate directory.

```
make headers_check
make INSTALL_HDR_PATH=dest headers_install
find dest/include \( -name .install -o -name ..install.cmd \) -delete
cp -rv dest/include/* /usr/include
```

### 6.7.2. Contents of Linux API Headers

**Installed headers:** /usr/include/asm/\*.h, /usr/include/asm-generic/\*.h, /usr/include/drm/\*.h, /usr/include/linux/\*.h, /usr/include/mtd/\*.h, /usr/include/rdma/\*.h, /usr/include/scsi/\*.h, /usr/include/sound/\*.h, /usr/include/video/\*.h, /usr/include/xen/\*.h

**Installed directories:** /usr/include/asm, /usr/include/asm-generic, /usr/include/drm, /usr/include/linux, /usr/include/mtd, /usr/include/rdma, /usr/include/scsi, /usr/include/sound, /usr/include/video, /usr/include/xen

### Short Descriptions

/usr/include/asm/*.h	The Linux API ASM Headers
/usr/include/asm-generic/*.h	The Linux API ASM Generic Headers
/usr/include/drm/*.h	The Linux API DRM Headers
/usr/include/linux/*.h	The Linux API Linux Headers
/usr/include/mtd/*.h	The Linux API MTD Headers
/usr/include/rdma/*.h	The Linux API RDMA Headers
/usr/include/scsi/*.h	The Linux API SCSI Headers
/usr/include/sound/*.h	The Linux API Sound Headers
/usr/include/video/*.h	The Linux API Video Headers
/usr/include/xen/*.h	The Linux API Xen Headers

## 6.8. Man-pages-3.59

The Man-pages package contains over 1,900 man pages.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 23 MB

### 6.8.1. Installation of Man-pages

Install Man-pages by running:

```
make install
```

### 6.8.2. Contents of Man-pages

**Installed files:** various man pages

#### Short Descriptions

`man pages` Describe C programming language functions, important device files, and significant configuration files



## 6.9. Glibc-2.19

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

**Approximate build time:** 17.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 922 MB

### 6.9.1. Installation of Glibc



#### Note

Some packages outside of LFS suggest installing GNU libiconv in order to translate data from one encoding to another. The project's home page (<http://www.gnu.org/software/libiconv/>) says “This library provides an `iconv()` implementation, for use on systems which don't have one, or whose implementation cannot convert from/to Unicode.” Glibc provides an `iconv()` implementation and can convert from/to Unicode, therefore libiconv is not required on an LFS system.

First fix a minor problem when installing the tzselect script:

```
sed -i 's/\\\$$(pwd)/`pwd`/' timezone/Makefile
```

The Glibc build system is self-contained and will install perfectly, even though the compiler specs file and linker are still pointing at `/tools`. The specs and linker cannot be adjusted before the Glibc install because the Glibc autoconf tests would give false results and defeat the goal of achieving a clean build.

Some of the Glibc programs use non-FHS compliant `/var/db` directory to store their runtime data. Apply the following patch to make such programs store their runtime data in the FHS-compliant locations:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.19-fhs-1.patch
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../glibc-build
cd ../glibc-build
```

Prepare Glibc for compilation:

```
../glibc-2.19/configure \
  --prefix=/usr \
  --disable-profile \
  --enable-kernel=2.6.32 \
  --enable-obsolete-rpc
```

**The meaning of the new configure options:**

`--enable-obsolete-rpc`

Installs NIS and RPC related headers that are not installed by default; these are required to rebuild Glibc and by several BLFS packages.

Compile the package:

```
make
```



## Important

In this section, the test suite for Glibc is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

Generally a few tests do not pass, but you can generally ignore any of the test failures listed below. Now test the build results:

```
make -k check 2>&1 | tee glibc-check-log
grep Error glibc-check-log
```

You will probably see an expected (ignored) failure in the *posix/annexc* and *conform/run-conformtest* tests. In addition the Glibc test suite is somewhat dependent on the host system. This is a list of the most common issues:

- The *nptl/tst-clock2*, *nptl/tst-attr3*, *tst/tst-cputimer1*, and *rt/tst-cpuclock2* tests have been known to fail. The reason is not completely understood, but indications are that minor timing issues can trigger these failures.
- The math tests sometimes fail when running on systems where the CPU is not a relatively new genuine Intel or authentic AMD processor.
- When running on older and slower hardware or on systems under load, some tests can fail because of test timeouts being exceeded. Modifying the make check command to set a `TIMEOUTFACTOR` is reported to help eliminate these errors (e.g. `TIMEOUTFACTOR=16 make -k check`).
- *posix/tst-getaddrinfo4* will always fail due to not having a network connection when the test is run.
- *libio/tst-ftell-partial-wide.out* fails because it needs a locale that has not yet been generated.
- Other tests known to fail on some architectures are *posix/bug-regex32*, *misc/tst-writev*, *elf/check-textrel*, *nptl/tst-getpid2*, *nptl/tst-robust8*, and *stdio-common/bug22*.

Though it is a harmless message, the install stage of Glibc will complain about the absence of `/etc/ld.so.conf`. Prevent this warning with:

```
touch /etc/ld.so.conf
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Install the configuration file and runtime directory for `nscd`:

```
cp -v ../glibc-2.19/nscd/nscd.conf /etc/nscd.conf
mkdir -pv /var/cache/nscd
```

Install the Systemd support files for `nscd`:

```
install -v -Dm644 ../glibc-2.19/nscd/nscd.tmpfiles /etc/tmpfiles.d/nscd.conf
install -v -Dm644 ../glibc-2.19/nscd/nscd.service /lib/systemd/system/nscd.service
```

The locales that can make the system respond in a different language were not installed by the above command. None of the locales are required, but if some of them are missing, test suites of the future packages would skip important testcases.

Individual locales can be installed using the **localedef** program. E.g., the first **localedef** command below combines the `/usr/share/i18n/locales/cs_CZ` charset-independent locale definition with the `/usr/share/i18n/charmaps/UTF-8.gz` charmap definition and appends the result to the `/usr/lib/locale/locale-archive` file. The following instructions will install the minimum set of locales necessary for the optimal coverage of tests:

```
mkdir -pv /usr/lib/locale
localedef -i cs_CZ -f UTF-8 cs_CZ.UTF-8
localedef -i de_DE -f ISO-8859-1 de_DE
localedef -i de_DE@euro -f ISO-8859-15 de_DE@euro
localedef -i de_DE -f UTF-8 de_DE.UTF-8
localedef -i en_GB -f UTF-8 en_GB.UTF-8
localedef -i en_HK -f ISO-8859-1 en_HK
localedef -i en_PH -f ISO-8859-1 en_PH
localedef -i en_US -f ISO-8859-1 en_US
localedef -i en_US -f UTF-8 en_US.UTF-8
localedef -i es_MX -f ISO-8859-1 es_MX
localedef -i fa_IR -f UTF-8 fa_IR
localedef -i fr_FR -f ISO-8859-1 fr_FR
localedef -i fr_FR@euro -f ISO-8859-15 fr_FR@euro
localedef -i fr_FR -f UTF-8 fr_FR.UTF-8
localedef -i it_IT -f ISO-8859-1 it_IT
localedef -i it_IT -f UTF-8 it_IT.UTF-8
localedef -i ja_JP -f EUC-JP ja_JP
localedef -i ru_RU -f KOI8-R ru_RU.KOI8-R
localedef -i ru_RU -f UTF-8 ru_RU.UTF-8
localedef -i tr_TR -f UTF-8 tr_TR.UTF-8
localedef -i zh_CN -f GB18030 zh_CN.GB18030
```

In addition, install the locale for your own country, language and character set.

Alternatively, install all locales listed in the `glibc-2.19/localedata/SUPPORTED` file (it includes every locale listed above and many more) at once with the following time-consuming command:

```
make localedata/install-locales
```

Then use the **localedef** command to create and install locales not listed in the `glibc-2.19/localedata/SUPPORTED` file in the unlikely case you need them.

## 6.9.2. Configuring Glibc

The `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file needs to be created because, although Glibc provides defaults when this file is missing or corrupt, the Glibc defaults do not work well in a networked environment. The time zone also needs to be configured.

Create a new file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/nsswitch.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf

passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files

hosts: files dns myhostname
networks: files

protocols: files
services: files
ethers: files
rpc: files

# End /etc/nsswitch.conf
EOF
```

Install timezone data:

```
tar -xf ../tzdata2013i.tar.gz

ZONEINFO=/usr/share/zoneinfo
mkdir -pv $ZONEINFO/{posix,right}

for tz in etcetera southamerica northamerica europe africa antarctica \
        asia australasia backward pacificnew systemv; do
    zic -L /dev/null -d $ZONEINFO -y "sh yearistype.sh" ${tz}
    zic -L /dev/null -d $ZONEINFO/posix -y "sh yearistype.sh" ${tz}
    zic -L leapseconds -d $ZONEINFO/right -y "sh yearistype.sh" ${tz}
done

cp -v zone.tab iso3166.tab $ZONEINFO
zic -d $ZONEINFO -p America/New_York
unset ZONEINFO
```

The meaning of the `zic` commands:

```
zic -L /dev/null ...
```

This creates posix timezones, without any leap seconds. It is conventional to put these in both `zoneinfo` and `zoneinfo/posix`. It is necessary to put the POSIX timezones in `zoneinfo`, otherwise various test-suites will report errors. On an embedded system, where space is tight and you do not intend to ever update the timezones, you could save 1.9MB by not using the `posix` directory, but some applications or test-suites might give less good results

```
zic -L leapseconds ...
```

This creates right timezones, including leap seconds. On an embedded system, where space is tight and you do not intend to ever update the timezones, or care about the correct time, you could save 1.9MB by omitting the `right` directory.

```
zic ... -p ...
```

This creates the `posixrules` file. We use New York because POSIX requires the daylight savings time rules to be in accordance with US rules.

One way to determine the local time zone is to run the following script:

```
tzselect
```

After answering a few questions about the location, the script will output the name of the time zone (e.g., *America/Edmonton*). There are also some other possible timezones listed in `/usr/share/zoneinfo` such as *Canada/Eastern* or *EST5EDT* that are not identified by the script but can be used.

Then create the `/etc/localtime` file by running:

```
ln -sv /usr/share/zoneinfo/<xxx> /etc/localtime
```

Replace `<xxx>` with the name of the time zone selected (e.g., *Canada/Eastern*).

### 6.9.3. Configuring the Dynamic Loader

By default, the dynamic loader (`/lib/ld-linux.so.2`) searches through `/lib` and `/usr/lib` for dynamic libraries that are needed by programs as they are run. However, if there are libraries in directories other than `/lib` and `/usr/lib`, these need to be added to the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file in order for the dynamic loader to find them. Two directories that are commonly known to contain additional libraries are `/usr/local/lib` and `/opt/lib`, so add those directories to the dynamic loader's search path.

Create a new file `/etc/ld.so.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf
/usr/local/lib
/opt/lib

EOF
```

If desired, the dynamic loader can also search a directory and include the contents of files found there. Generally the files in this include directory are one line specifying the desired library path. To add this capability run the following commands:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Add an include directory
include /etc/ld.so.conf.d/*.conf

EOF
mkdir -pv /etc/ld.so.conf.d
```

## 6.9.4. Contents of Glibc

<b>Installed programs:</b>	catchsegv, gencat, getconf, getent, iconv, iconvconfig, ldconfig, ldd, lddlibc4, locale, localedef, makedb, mtrace, nscd, pcprofiledump, pldd, rpcgen, sln, sotruss, sprof, tzselect, xtrace, zdump, and zic
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	ld.so, libBrokenLocale.{a,so}, libSegFault.so, libanl.{a,so}, libc.{a,so}, libc_nonshared.a, libcidn.so, libcrypt.{a,so}, libdl.{a,so}, libg.a, libieee.a, libm.{a,so}, libmcheck.a, libmemusage.so, libnsl.{a,so}, libnss_compat.so, libnss_dns.so, libnss_files.so, libnss_hesiod.so, libnss_nis.so, libnss_nisplus.so, libpcprofile.so, libpthread.{a,so}, libpthread_nonshared.a, libresolv.{a,so}, librpcsvc.a, librt.{a,so}, libthread_db.so, and libutil.{a,so}
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/include/arpa, /usr/include/bits, /usr/include/gnu, /usr/include/net, /usr/include/netash, /usr/include/netatalk, /usr/include/netax25, /usr/include/neteconet, /usr/include/netinet, /usr/include/netipx, /usr/include/netiucv, /usr/include/netpacket, /usr/include/netrom, /usr/include/netrose, /usr/include/nfs, /usr/include/protocols, /usr/include/rpc, /usr/include/rpcsvc, /usr/include/sys, /usr/lib/audit, /usr/lib/gconv, /usr/lib/getconf, /usr/lib/locale, /usr/share/i18n, /usr/share/zoneinfo, /var/cache/nscd, and /var/lib/nss_db

## Short Descriptions

<b>catchsegv</b>	Can be used to create a stack trace when a program terminates with a segmentation fault
<b>gencat</b>	Generates message catalogues
<b>getconf</b>	Displays the system configuration values for file system specific variables
<b>getent</b>	Gets entries from an administrative database
<b>iconv</b>	Performs character set conversion
<b>iconvconfig</b>	Creates fastloading <b>iconv</b> module configuration files
<b>ldconfig</b>	Configures the dynamic linker runtime bindings
<b>ldd</b>	Reports which shared libraries are required by each given program or shared library
<b>lddlibc4</b>	Assists <b>ldd</b> with object files
<b>locale</b>	Prints various information about the current locale
<b>localedef</b>	Compiles locale specifications
<b>makedb</b>	Creates a simple database from textual input
<b>mtrace</b>	Reads and interprets a memory trace file and displays a summary in human-readable format
<b>nscd</b>	A daemon that provides a cache for the most common name service requests
<b>pcprofiledump</b>	Dumps information generated by PC profiling
<b>pldd</b>	Lists dynamic shared objects used by running processes
<b>rpcgen</b>	Generates C code to implement the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) protocol
<b>sln</b>	A statically linked <b>ln</b> program
<b>sotruss</b>	Traces shared library procedure calls of a specified command
<b>sprof</b>	Reads and displays shared object profiling data
<b>tzselect</b>	Asks the user about the location of the system and reports the corresponding time zone description

<b>xtrace</b>	Traces the execution of a program by printing the currently executed function
<b>zdump</b>	The time zone dumper
<b>zic</b>	The time zone compiler
ld.so	The helper program for shared library executables
libBrokenLocale	Used internally by Glibc as a gross hack to get broken programs (e.g., some Motif applications) running. See comments in <code>glibc-2.19/locale/broken_cur_max.c</code> for more information
libSegFault	The segmentation fault signal handler, used by <b>catchsegv</b>
libanl	An asynchronous name lookup library
libc	The main C library
libcidn	Used internally by Glibc for handling internationalized domain names in the <code>getaddrinfo()</code> function
libcrypt	The cryptography library
libdl	The dynamic linking interface library
libg	Dummy library containing no functions. Previously was a runtime library for <b>g++</b>
libieee	Linking in this module forces error handling rules for math functions as defined by the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE). The default is POSIX.1 error handling
libm	The mathematical library
libmcheck	Turns on memory allocation checking when linked to
libmemusage	Used by <b>memusage</b> to help collect information about the memory usage of a program
libnsl	The network services library
libnss	The Name Service Switch libraries, containing functions for resolving host names, user names, group names, aliases, services, protocols, etc.
libpcprofile	Contains profiling functions used to track the amount of CPU time spent in specific source code lines
libpthread	The POSIX threads library
libresolv	Contains functions for creating, sending, and interpreting packets to the Internet domain name servers
librpcsvc	Contains functions providing miscellaneous RPC services
librt	Contains functions providing most of the interfaces specified by the POSIX.1b Realtime Extension
libthread_db	Contains functions useful for building debuggers for multi-threaded programs
libutil	Contains code for “standard” functions used in many different Unix utilities

## 6.10. Adjusting the Toolchain

Now that the final C libraries have been installed, it is time to adjust the toolchain so that it will link any newly compiled program against these new libraries.

First, backup the `/tools` linker, and replace it with the adjusted linker we made in chapter 5. We'll also create a link to its counterpart in `/tools/$(gcc -dumpmachine)/bin`:

```
mv -v /tools/bin/{ld,ld-old}
mv -v /tools/$(gcc -dumpmachine)/bin/{ld,ld-old}
mv -v /tools/bin/{ld-new,ld}
ln -sv /tools/bin/ld /tools/$(gcc -dumpmachine)/bin/ld
```

Next, amend the GCC specs file so that it points to the new dynamic linker. Simply deleting all instances of `"/tools"` should leave us with the correct path to the dynamic linker. Also adjust the specs file so that GCC knows where to find the correct headers and Glibc start files. A `sed` command accomplishes this:

```
gcc -dumpspecs | sed -e 's@/tools@g' \
-e '/\*startfile_prefix_spec:{n;s@.*@/usr/lib/ @}' \
-e '/\*cpp:{n;s@$$ -isystem /usr/include@}' > \
`dirname $(gcc --print-libgcc-file-name)`/specs
```

It is a good idea to visually inspect the specs file to verify the intended change was actually made.

It is imperative at this point to ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the adjusted toolchain are working as expected. To do this, perform the following sanity checks:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
cc dummy.c -v -Wl,--verbose &> dummy.log
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /lib'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name):

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Note that `/lib` is now the prefix of our dynamic linker.

Now make sure that we're setup to use the correct startfiles:

```
grep -o '/usr/lib./crt[lin].*succeeded' dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be:

```
/usr/lib/crt1.o succeeded
/usr/lib/crti.o succeeded
/usr/lib/crtn.o succeeded
```

Verify that the compiler is searching for the correct header files:

```
grep -B1 '^ /usr/include' dummy.log
```



This command should return successfully with the following output:

```
#include <...> search starts here:
/usr/include
```

Next, verify that the new linker is being used with the correct search paths:

```
grep 'SEARCH.*usr/lib' dummy.log |sed 's|; |\n|g'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be:

```
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib");
```

Next make sure that we're using the correct libc:

```
grep "/lib.*libc.so.6 " dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command (allowing for a lib64 directory on 64-bit hosts) will be:

```
attempt to open /lib/libc.so.6 succeeded
```

Lastly, make sure GCC is using the correct dynamic linker:

```
grep found dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name and a lib64 directory on 64-bit hosts):

```
found ld-linux.so.2 at /lib/ld-linux.so.2
```

If the output does not appear as shown above or is not received at all, then something is seriously wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. The most likely reason is that something went wrong with the specs file adjustment. Any issues will need to be resolved before continuing on with the process.

Once everything is working correctly, clean up the test files:

```
rm -v dummy.c a.out dummy.log
```

## 6.11. Zlib-1.2.8

The Zlib package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.6 MB

### 6.11.1. Installation of Zlib

Prepare Zlib for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libz.so.* /lib  
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libz.so) /usr/lib/libz.so
```

### 6.11.2. Contents of Zlib

**Installed libraries:** libz.{a,so}

#### Short Descriptions

`libz` Contains compression and decompression functions used by some programs

## 6.12. File-5.17

The File package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 12.5 MB

### 6.12.1. Installation of File

Prepare File for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.12.2. Contents of File

**Installed programs:** file

**Installed library:** libmagic.so

#### Short Descriptions

**file** Tries to classify each given file; it does this by performing several tests—file system tests, magic number tests, and language tests

`libmagic.so` Contains routines for magic number recognition, used by the **file** program

## 6.13. Binutils-2.24

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 2.0 SBU

**Required disk space:** 365 MB

### 6.13.1. Installation of Binutils

Verify that the PTYs are working properly inside the chroot environment by performing a simple test:

```
expect -c "spawn ls"
```

This command should output the following:

```
spawn ls
```

If, instead, the output includes the message below, then the environment is not set up for proper PTY operation. This issue needs to be resolved before running the test suites for Binutils and GCC:

```
The system has no more ptys.
Ask your system administrator to create more.
```

Suppress the installation of an outdated `standards.info` file as a newer one is installed later on in the Autoconf instructions:

```
rm -fv etc/standards.info
sed -i.bak '/^INFO/s/standards.info //' etc/Makefile.in
```

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../binutils-2.24/configure --prefix=/usr --enable-shared
```

Compile the package:

```
make tooldir=/usr
```

**The meaning of the make parameter:**

```
tooldir=/usr
```

Normally, the `tooldir` (the directory where the executables will ultimately be located) is set to `$(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias)`. For example, `x86_64` machines would expand that to `/usr/x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu`. Because this is a custom system, this target-specific directory in `/usr` is not required. `$(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias)` would be used if the system was used to cross-compile (for example, compiling a package on an Intel machine that generates code that can be executed on PowerPC machines).



#### Important

The test suite for Binutils in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make tooldir=/usr install
```

## 6.13.2. Contents of Binutils

**Installed programs:** addr2line, ar, as, c++filt, elfedit, gprof, ld, ld.bfd, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, readelf, size, strings, and strip

**Installed libraries:** libbfd.{a,so}, and libopcodes.{a,so}

**Installed directory:** /usr/lib/ldscripts

### Short Descriptions

**addr2line** Translates program addresses to file names and line numbers; given an address and the name of an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to determine which source file and line number are associated with the address

**ar** Creates, modifies, and extracts from archives

**as** An assembler that assembles the output of **gcc** into object files

**c++filt** Used by the linker to de-mangle C++ and Java symbols and to keep overloaded functions from clashing

**elfedit** Updates the ELF header of ELF files

**gprof** Displays call graph profile data

**ld** A linker that combines a number of object and archive files into a single file, relocating their data and tying up symbol references

**ld.bfd** Hard link to **ld**

**nm** Lists the symbols occurring in a given object file

**objcopy** Translates one type of object file into another

**objdump** Displays information about the given object file, with options controlling the particular information to display; the information shown is useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools

**ranlib** Generates an index of the contents of an archive and stores it in the archive; the index lists all of the symbols defined by archive members that are relocatable object files

**readelf** Displays information about ELF type binaries

**size** Lists the section sizes and the total size for the given object files

**strings** Outputs, for each given file, the sequences of printable characters that are of at least the specified length (defaulting to four); for object files, it prints, by default, only the strings from the initializing and loading sections while for other types of files, it scans the entire file

**strip** Discards symbols from object files

**libbfd** The Binary File Descriptor library

**libopcodes** A library for dealing with opcodes—the “readable text” versions of instructions for the processor; it is used for building utilities like **objdump**.

## 6.14. GMP-5.1.3

The GMP package contains math libraries. These have useful functions for arbitrary precision arithmetic.

**Approximate build time:** 1.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 50 MB

### 6.14.1. Installation of GMP



#### Note

If you are building for 32-bit x86, but you have a CPU which is capable of running 64-bit code *and* you have specified `CFLAGS` in the environment, the configure script will attempt to configure for 64-bits and fail. Avoid this by invoking the configure command below with

```
ABI=32 ./configure ...
```

Prepare GMP for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-cxx
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

`--enable-cxx`

This parameter enables C++ support

Compile the package:

```
make
```



#### Important

The test suite for GMP in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results:

```
make check 2>&1 | tee gmp-check-log
```

Ensure that all 185 tests in the test suite passed. Check the results by issuing the following command:

```
awk '/tests passed/{total+=$2} ; END{print total}' gmp-check-log
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/gmp-5.1.3
cp -v doc/{isa_abi_headache,configuration} doc/*.html \
    /usr/share/doc/gmp-5.1.3
```

### 6.14.2. Contents of GMP

**Installed Libraries:** libgmp.{a,so} and libgmpxx.{a,so}

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/gmp-5.1.3

## Short Descriptions

`libgmp` Contains precision math functions.

`libgmpxx` Contains C++ precision math functions.

## 6.15. MPFR-3.1.2

The MPFR package contains functions for multiple precision math.

**Approximate build time:** 0.8 SBU

**Required disk space:** 27 MB

### 6.15.1. Installation of MPFR

Prepare MPFR for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --enable-thread-safe \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/mpfr-3.1.2
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```



#### Important

The test suite for MPFR in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results and ensure that all tests passed:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Install the documentation:

```
make html
make install-html
```

### 6.15.2. Contents of MPFR

**Installed Libraries:** libmpfr.{a,so}

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/mpfr-3.1.2

#### Short Descriptions

`libmpfr` Contains multiple-precision math functions.



## 6.16. MPC-1.0.2

The MPC package contains a library for the arithmetic of complex numbers with arbitrarily high precision and correct rounding of the result.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 10.2 MB

### 6.16.1. Installation of MPC

Prepare MPC for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.16.2. Contents of MPC

**Installed Libraries:** libmpc.{a,so}

#### Short Descriptions

libmpc Contains complex math functions

## 6.17. GCC-4.8.2

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 55.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.2 GB

### 6.17.1. Installation of GCC

As in Section 5.10, “GCC-4.8.2 - Pass 2”, apply the following `sed` to force the build to use the `-fomit-frame-pointer` compiler flag in order to ensure consistent compiler builds:

```
case `uname -m` in
  i?86) sed -i 's/^T_CFLAGS =$/& -fomit-frame-pointer/' gcc/Makefile.in ;;
esac
```

Also fix an error in one of the check Makefiles and disable one test in the `g++ libmudflap` test suite:

```
sed -i -e /autogen/d -e /check.sh/d fixincludes/Makefile.in
mv -v libmudflap/testsuite/libmudflap.c++/pass41-frag.cxx{,.disable}
```

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Prepare GCC for compilation:

```
SED=sed
../gcc-4.8.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
  --enable-shared \
  --enable-threads=posix \
  --enable-__cxa_atexit \
  --enable-clocale=gnu \
  --enable-languages=c,c++ \
  --disable-multilib \
  --disable-bootstrap \
  --with-system-zlib
```

Note that for other languages, there are some prerequisites that are not available. See the BLFS Book for instructions on how to build all the GCC supported languages.

**The meaning of the new configure option:**

`SED=sed`

Setting this environment variable prevents a hard-coded path to `/tools/bin/sed`.

`--with-system-zlib`

This switch tells GCC to link to the system installed copy of the Zlib library, rather than its own internal copy.

Compile the package:

```
make
```



## Important

In this section, the test suite for GCC is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

One set of tests in the GCC test suite is known to exhaust the stack, so increase the stack size prior to running the tests:

```
ulimit -s 32768
```

Test the results, but do not stop at errors:

```
make -k check
```

To receive a summary of the test suite results, run:

```
../gcc-4.8.2/contrib/test_summary
```

For only the summaries, pipe the output through `grep -A7 Summ`.

Results can be compared with those located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/build-logs/7.5-systemd-rc1/> and <http://gcc.gnu.org/ml/gcc-testresults/>.

A few unexpected failures cannot always be avoided. The GCC developers are usually aware of these issues, but have not resolved them yet. In particular, the `libmudflap` tests are known to be particularly problematic as a result of a bug in GCC ([http://gcc.gnu.org/bugzilla/show\\_bug.cgi?id=20003](http://gcc.gnu.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=20003)). Unless the test results are vastly different from those at the above URL, it is safe to continue.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Some packages expect the C preprocessor to be installed in the `/lib` directory. To support those packages, create this symlink:

```
ln -sv ../usr/bin/cpp /lib
```

Many packages use the name `cc` to call the C compiler. To satisfy those packages, create a symlink:

```
ln -sv gcc /usr/bin/cc
```

Now that our final toolchain is in place, it is important to again ensure that compiling and linking will work as expected. We do this by performing the same sanity checks as we did earlier in the chapter:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
cc dummy.c -v -Wl,--verbose &> dummy.log
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /lib'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name):

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Now make sure that we're setup to use the correct startfiles:

```
grep -o '/usr/lib.*/crt[lin].*succeeded' dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be:

```
/usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.8.2/../../../../crt1.o succeeded
/usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.8.2/../../../../crti.o succeeded
/usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.8.2/../../../../crtn.o succeeded
```

Depending on your machine architecture, the above may differ slightly, the difference usually being the name of the directory after `/usr/lib/gcc`. If your machine is a 64-bit system, you may also see a directory named `lib64` towards the end of the string. The important thing to look for here is that **gcc** has found all three `crt*.o` files under the `/usr/lib` directory.

Verify that the compiler is searching for the correct header files:

```
grep -B4 '^ /usr/include' dummy.log
```

This command should return successfully with the following output:

```
#include <...> search starts here:
/usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.8.2/include
/usr/local/include
/usr/lib/gcc/i686-pc-linux-gnu/4.8.2/include-fixed
/usr/include
```

Again, note that the directory named after your target triplet may be different than the above, depending on your architecture.



### Note

As of version 4.3.0, GCC now unconditionally installs the `limits.h` file into the private `include-fixed` directory, and that directory is required to be in place.

Next, verify that the new linker is being used with the correct search paths:

```
grep 'SEARCH.*usr/lib' dummy.log |sed 's|; |\n|g'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be:

```
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/i686-pc-linux-gnu/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib");
```

A 64-bit system may see a few more directories. For example, here is the output from an `x86_64` machine:

```
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib");
```

Next make sure that we're using the correct libc:

```
grep "/lib.*libc.so.6 " dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command (allowing for a lib64 directory on 64-bit hosts) will be:

```
attempt to open /lib/libc.so.6 succeeded
```

Lastly, make sure GCC is using the correct dynamic linker:

```
grep found dummy.log
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name and a lib64 directory on 64-bit hosts):

```
found ld-linux.so.2 at /lib/ld-linux.so.2
```

If the output does not appear as shown above or is not received at all, then something is seriously wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. The most likely reason is that something went wrong with the specs file adjustment. Any issues will need to be resolved before continuing on with the process.

Once everything is working correctly, clean up the test files:

```
rm -v dummy.c a.out dummy.log
```

Finally, move a misplaced file:

```
mkdir -pv /usr/share/gdb/auto-load/usr/lib
mv -v /usr/lib/*gdb.py /usr/share/gdb/auto-load/usr/lib
```

## 6.17.2. Contents of GCC

<b>Installed programs:</b>	c++, cc (link to gcc), cpp, g++, gcc, gcc-ar, gcc-nm, gcc-ranlib, and gcov
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libasan.{a,so}, libatomic.{a,so}, libgcc.a, libgcc_eh.a, libgcc_s.so, libgcov.a, libgomp.{a,so}, libiberty.a, libitm.{a,so}, liblto_plugin.so, libmudflap.{a,so}, libmudflapth.{a,so}, libquadmath.{a,so}, libssp.{a,so}, libssp_nonshared.a, libstdc++.a, libstdc++.so, libsupc++a and libtsan.{a,so}
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/include/c++, /usr/lib/gcc, /usr/share/gcc-4.8.2

### Short Descriptions

<b>c++</b>	The C++ compiler
<b>cc</b>	The C compiler
<b>cpp</b>	The C preprocessor; it is used by the compiler to expand the #include, #define, and similar statements in the source files
<b>g++</b>	The C++ compiler
<b>gcc</b>	The C compiler
<b>gcc-ar</b>	A wrapper around <b>ar</b> that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options.

<b>gcc-nm</b>	A wrapper around <b>nm</b> that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options.
<b>gcc-ranlib</b>	A wrapper around <b>ranlib</b> that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options.
<b>gcov</b>	A coverage testing tool; it is used to analyze programs to determine where optimizations will have the most effect
<b>libasan</b>	The Address Sanitizer runtime library
<b>libgcc</b>	Contains run-time support for <b>gcc</b>
<b>libgcov</b>	This library is linked in to a program when GCC is instructed to enable profiling
<b>libgomp</b>	GNU implementation of the OpenMP API for multi-platform shared-memory parallel programming in C/C++ and Fortran
<b>libiberty</b>	Contains routines used by various GNU programs, including <b>getopt</b> , <b>obstack</b> , <b>strerror</b> , <b>strtol</b> , and <b>strtoul</b>
<b>liblto_plugin</b>	GCC's Link Time Optimization (LTO) plugin allows GCC to perform optimizations across compilation units.
<b>libmudflap</b>	Contains routines that support GCC's bounds checking functionality
<b>libquadmath</b>	GCC Quad Precision Math Library API
<b>libssp</b>	Contains routines supporting GCC's stack-smashing protection functionality
<b>libstdc++</b>	The standard C++ library
<b>libsupc++</b>	Provides supporting routines for the C++ programming language
<b>libtsan</b>	The Thread Sanitizer runtime library

## 6.18. Sed-4.2.2

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.7 MB

### 6.18.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin --htmldir=/usr/share/doc/sed-4.2.2
```

The meaning of the new configure option:

*--htmldir*

This sets the directory where the HTML documentation will be installed to.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Generate the HTML documentation:

```
make html
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Install the HTML documentation:

```
make -C doc install-html
```

### 6.18.2. Contents of Sed

**Installed program:** sed

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/sed-4.2.2

### Short Descriptions

**sed** Filters and transforms text files in a single pass

## 6.19. Bzip2-1.0.6

The Bzip2 package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. Compressing text files with **bzip2** yields a much better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip**.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.9 MB

### 6.19.1. Installation of Bzip2

Apply a patch that will install the documentation for this package:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bzip2-1.0.6-install_docs-1.patch
```

The following command ensures installation of symbolic links are relative:

```
sed -i 's@\(ln -s -f \)\$(PREFIX)/bin/@\1@' Makefile
```

Ensure the man pages are installed into the correct location:

```
sed -i "s@(PREFIX)/man@(PREFIX)/share/man@g" Makefile
```

Prepare Bzip2 for compilation with:

```
make -f Makefile-libbz2_so
make clean
```

**The meaning of the make parameter:**

*-f Makefile-libbz2\_so*

This will cause Bzip2 to be built using a different `Makefile` file, in this case the `Makefile-libbz2_so` file, which creates a dynamic `libbz2.so` library and links the Bzip2 utilities against it.

Compile and test the package:

```
make
```

Install the programs:

```
make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Install the shared **bzip2** binary into the `/bin` directory, make some necessary symbolic links, and clean up:

```
cp -v bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2
cp -av libbz2.so* /lib
ln -sv ../../lib/libbz2.so.1.0 /usr/lib/libbz2.so
rm -v /usr/bin/{bunzip2,bzcat,bzip2}
ln -sv bzip2 /bin/bunzip2
ln -sv bzip2 /bin/bzcat
```

### 6.19.2. Contents of Bzip2

**Installed programs:** bunzip2 (link to bzip2), bzcat (link to bzip2), bzcmp (link to bzdiff), bzdiff, bzegrep (link to bzgrep), bzfgrep (link to bzgrep), bzgrep, bzip2, bzip2recover, bzless (link to bzmored), and bzmored

**Installed libraries:** libbz2.{a,so}

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/bzip2-1.0.6



## Short Descriptions

<b>bunzip2</b>	Decompresses bziped files
<b>bzcat</b>	Decompresses to standard output
<b>bzcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on bziped files
<b>bzdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on bziped files
<b>bzegrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzip2</b>	Compresses files using the Burrows-Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm with Huffman coding; the compression rate is better than that achieved by more conventional compressors using “Lempel-Ziv” algorithms, like <b>gzip</b>
<b>bzip2recover</b>	Tries to recover data from damaged bziped files
<b>bzless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on bziped files
<b>bzmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on bziped files
libbz2*	The library implementing lossless, block-sorting data compression, using the Burrows-Wheeler algorithm

## 6.20. Pkg-config-0.28

The pkg-config package contains a tool for passing the include path and/or library paths to build tools during the configure and make file execution.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 31 MB

### 6.20.1. Installation of Pkg-config

Prepare Pkg-config for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          \
            --with-internal-glib   \
            --disable-host-tool    \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/pkg-config-0.28
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

*--with-internal-glib*

This will allow pkg-config to use its internal version of Glib because an external version is not available in LFS.

*--disable-host-tool*

This option disables the creation of an undesired hard link to the pkg-config program.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.20.2. Contents of Pkg-config

**Installed program:** pkg-config

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/pkg-config-0.28

### Short Descriptions

**pkg-config** returns meta information for the specified library or package.

## 6.21. Ncurses-5.9

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 40 MB

### 6.21.1. Installation of Ncurses

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man \
            --with-shared          \
            --without-debug        \
            --enable-pc-files      \
            --enable-widec
```

**The meaning of the configure option:**

*--enable-widec*

This switch causes wide-character libraries (e.g., `libncursesw.so.5.9`) to be built instead of normal ones (e.g., `libncurses.so.5.9`). These wide-character libraries are usable in both multibyte and traditional 8-bit locales, while normal libraries work properly only in 8-bit locales. Wide-character and normal libraries are source-compatible, but not binary-compatible.

*--enable-pc-files*

This switch generates and installs `.pc` files for `pkg-config`.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package has a test suite, but it can only be run after the package has been installed. The tests reside in the `test/` directory. See the `README` file in that directory for further details.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move the shared libraries to the `/lib` directory, where they are expected to reside:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libncursesw.so.5* /lib
```

Because the libraries have been moved, one symlink points to a non-existent file. Recreate it:

```
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libncursesw.so) /usr/lib/libncursesw.so
```

Many applications still expect the linker to be able to find non-wide-character Ncurses libraries. Trick such applications into linking with wide-character libraries by means of symlinks and linker scripts:

```
for lib in ncurses form panel menu ; do
  rm -vf /usr/lib/lib${lib}.so
  echo "INPUT(-l${lib}w)" > /usr/lib/lib${lib}.so
  ln -sfv lib${lib}w.a /usr/lib/lib${lib}.a
  ln -sfv ${lib}w.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/${lib}.pc
done

ln -sfv libncurses++w.a /usr/lib/libncurses++.a
```

Finally, make sure that old applications that look for `-lncurses` at build time are still buildable:

```
rm -vf /usr/lib/libcursesw.so
echo "INPUT(-lncursesw)" > /usr/lib/libcursesw.so
ln -sfv libcurses.so /usr/lib/libcurses.so
ln -sfv libcursesw.a /usr/lib/libcursesw.a
ln -sfv libcurses.a /usr/lib/libcurses.a
```

If desired, install the Ncurses documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/ncurses-5.9
cp -v -R doc/* /usr/share/doc/ncurses-5.9
```



## Note

The instructions above don't create non-wide-character Ncurses libraries since no package installed by compiling from sources would link against them at runtime. If you must have such libraries because of some binary-only application or to be compliant with LSB, build the package again with the following commands:

```
make distclean
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-shared \
            --without-normal \
            --without-debug \
            --without-cxx-binding
make sources libs
cp -av lib/lib*.so.5* /usr/lib
```

## 6.21.2. Contents of Ncurses

- Installed programs:** captinfo (link to tic), clear, infocmp, infotocap (link to tic), ncursesw5-config, reset (link to tset), tabs, tic, toe, tput, and tset
- Installed libraries:** libcursesw.{a,so} (symlink and linker script to libncursesw.{a,so}), libformw.{a,so}, libmenuw.{a,so}, libncurses++w.a, libncursesw.{a,so}, libpanelw.{a,so} and their non-wide-character counterparts without "w" in the library names.
- Installed directories:** /usr/share/tabset, /usr/share/terminfo, /usr/share/doc/ncurses-5.9

## Short Descriptions

<b>captoinfo</b>	Converts a termcap description into a terminfo description
<b>clear</b>	Clears the screen, if possible
<b>infocmp</b>	Compares or prints out terminfo descriptions
<b>infotocap</b>	Converts a terminfo description into a termcap description
<b>ncursesw5-config</b>	Provides configuration information for ncurses
<b>reset</b>	Reinitializes a terminal to its default values
<b>tabs</b>	Clears and sets tab stops on a terminal
<b>tic</b>	The terminfo entry-description compiler that translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format needed for the ncurses library routines. A terminfo file contains information on the capabilities of a certain terminal
<b>toe</b>	Lists all available terminal types, giving the primary name and description for each
<b>tput</b>	Makes the values of terminal-dependent capabilities available to the shell; it can also be used to reset or initialize a terminal or report its long name
<b>tset</b>	Can be used to initialize terminals
<code>libcurses</code>	A link to <code>libncurses</code>
<code>libncurses</code>	Contains functions to display text in many complex ways on a terminal screen; a good example of the use of these functions is the menu displayed during the kernel's <b>make menuconfig</b>
<code>libform</code>	Contains functions to implement forms
<code>libmenu</code>	Contains functions to implement menus
<code>libpanel</code>	Contains functions to implement panels

## 6.22. Attr-2.4.47

The attr package contains utilities to administer the extended attributes on filesystem objects.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.5 MB

### 6.22.1. Installation of Attr

Modify the documentation directory so that it is a versioned directory:

```
sed -i -e 's|/@pkg_name@|&-@pkg_version@|' include/builddefs.in
```

Prevent installation of manual pages that were already installed by Man-Pages package:

```
sed -i -e "/SUBDIRS/s|man2||" man/Makefile
```

Prepare Attr for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The Attr tests need to be run on a filesystem that supports extended attributes. To test the results, issue:

```
make -k tests root-tests
```

Install the package:

```
make install install-dev install-lib
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libattr.so
```

The shared library needs to be moved to /lib, and as a result the .so file in /usr/lib will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libattr.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/libattr.so.1 /usr/lib/libattr.so
```

### 6.22.2. Contents of Attr

<b>Installed programs:</b>	attr, getfattr, and setattr
<b>Installed library:</b>	libattr.{so,a}
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/include/attr, /usr/share/doc/attr-2.4.47

### Short Descriptions

<b>attr</b>	Extends attributes on filesystem objects
<b>getfattr</b>	Gets the extended attributes of filesystem objects.
<b>setattr</b>	Sets the extended attributes of filesystem objects
<b>libattr.{so,a}</b>	Contains the Attr API functions.

## 6.23. Acl-2.2.52

The Acl package contains utilities to administer Access Control Lists, which are used to define more fine-grained discretionary access rights for files and directories.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 5.4 MB

### 6.23.1. Installation of Acl

Modify the documentation directory so that it is a versioned directory:

```
sed -i -e 's|/@pkg_name@|&-@pkg_version@|' include/builddefs.in
```

Prepare Acl for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The Acl tests need to be run on a filesystem that supports access controls. You will see lot of failures because Coreutils wasn't compiled with ACL support. To anyways test the results, issue:

```
make -k tests root-tests
```



#### Note

Even if you run Acl tests after Coreutils has been built with Acl support, at least 11 tests will still fail for unknown reasons.

Install the package:

```
make install install-dev install-lib
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libacl.so
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libacl.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/libacl.so.1 /usr/lib/libacl.so
```

### 6.23.2. Contents of Acl

**Installed programs:** chacl, getfacl, and setacl

**Installed library:** libacl.{so,a}

**Installed directories:** /usr/include/acl, /usr/share/doc/acl-2.2.52

#### Short Descriptions

**chacl** Changes the access control list of a file or directory.

**getfacl** Gets file access control lists.

**setacl** Sets file access control lists.

`libacl.{so,a}` Contains the Acl API functions.



## 6.24. Libcap-2.24

The Libcap package implements the user-space interfaces to the POSIX 1003.1e capabilities available in Linux kernels. These capabilities are a partitioning of the all powerful root privilege into a set of distinct privileges.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.7 MB

### 6.24.1. Installation of Libcap

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make RAISE_SETFCAP=no prefix=/usr install
chmod -v 755 /usr/lib/libcap.so
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libcap.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/libcap.so.2 /usr/lib/libcap.so
```

### 6.24.2. Contents of Libcap

**Installed programs:** capsh, getcap, getpcaps, and setcap

**Installed library:** libcap.{so,a}

#### Short Descriptions

<b>capsh</b>	A shell wrapper to explore and constrain capability support
<b>getcap</b>	Examines file capabilities
<b>getpcaps</b>	Displays the capabilities on the queried process(es)
<b>libcap.{so,a}</b>	Contains the libcap API functions

## 6.25. Shadow-4.1.5.1

The Shadow package contains programs for handling passwords in a secure way.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 42 MB

### 6.25.1. Installation of Shadow



#### Note

If you would like to enforce the use of strong passwords, refer to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/cracklib.html> for installing CrackLib prior to building Shadow. Then add `--with-libcrack` to the **configure** command below.

Disable the installation of the **groups** program and its man pages, as Coreutils provides a better version:

```
sed -i 's/groups$(EXEEXT) //' src/Makefile.in
find man -name Makefile.in -exec sed -i 's/groups\.1 / /' {} \;
```

Instead of using the default *crypt* method, use the more secure *SHA-512* method of password encryption, which also allows passwords longer than 8 characters. It is also necessary to change the obsolete `/var/spool/mail` location for user mailboxes that Shadow uses by default to the `/var/mail` location used currently:

```
sed -i -e 's@#ENCRYPT_METHOD DES@ENCRYPT_METHOD SHA512@' \
-e 's@/var/spool/mail@/var/mail@' etc/login.defs
```



#### Note

If you chose to build Shadow with Cracklib support, run the following:

```
sed -i 's@DICTPATH.*@DICTPATH\t/lib/cracklib/pw_dict@' \
etc/login.defs
```

Prepare Shadow for compilation:

```
./configure --sysconfdir=/etc
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move a misplaced program to its proper location:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/passwd /bin
```

## 6.25.2. Configuring Shadow

This package contains utilities to add, modify, and delete users and groups; set and change their passwords; and perform other administrative tasks. For a full explanation of what *password shadowing* means, see the `doc/HOWTO` file within the unpacked source tree. If using Shadow support, keep in mind that programs which need to verify passwords (display managers, FTP programs, pop3 daemons, etc.) must be Shadow-compliant. That is, they need to be able to work with shadowed passwords.

To enable shadowed passwords, run the following command:

```
pwconv
```

To enable shadowed group passwords, run:

```
grpconv
```

Shadow's stock configuration for the **useradd** utility has a few caveats that need some explanation. First, the default action for the **useradd** utility is to create the user and a group of the same name as the user. By default the user ID (UID) and group ID (GID) numbers will begin with 1000. This means if you don't pass parameters to **useradd**, each user will be a member of a unique group on the system. If this behaviour is undesirable, you'll need to pass the `-g` parameter to **useradd**. The default parameters are stored in the `/etc/default/useradd` file. You may need to modify two parameters in this file to suit your particular needs.

### `/etc/default/useradd` Parameter Explanations

*GROUP=1000*

This parameter sets the beginning of the group numbers used in the `/etc/group` file. You can modify it to anything you desire. Note that **useradd** will never reuse a UID or GID. If the number identified in this parameter is used, it will use the next available number after this. Note also that if you don't have a group 1000 on your system the first time you use **useradd** without the `-g` parameter, you'll get a message displayed on the terminal that says: `useradd: unknown GID 1000`. You may disregard this message and group number 1000 will be used.

*CREATE\_MAIL\_SPOOL=yes*

This parameter causes **useradd** to create a mailbox file for the newly created user. **useradd** will make the group ownership of this file to the `mail` group with 0660 permissions. If you would prefer that these mailbox files are not created by **useradd**, issue the following command:

```
sed -i 's/yes/no/' /etc/default/useradd
```

## 6.25.3. Setting the root password

Choose a password for user *root* and set it by running:

```
passwd root
```

## 6.25.4. Contents of Shadow

<b>Installed programs:</b>	<code>chage</code> , <code>chfn</code> , <code>chpasswd</code> , <code>chpasswd</code> , <code>chsh</code> , <code>expiry</code> , <code>faillog</code> , <code>gpaswd</code> , <code>groupadd</code> , <code>groupdel</code> , <code>groupmems</code> , <code>groupmod</code> , <code>grpck</code> , <code>grpconv</code> , <code>grpunconv</code> , <code>lastlog</code> , <code>login</code> , <code>logoutd</code> , <code>newgrp</code> , <code>newusers</code> , <code>nologin</code> , <code>passwd</code> , <code>pwck</code> , <code>pwconv</code> , <code>pwunconv</code> , <code>sg</code> (link to <code>newgrp</code> ), <code>su</code> , <code>useradd</code> , <code>userdel</code> , <code>usermod</code> , <code>vigr</code> (link to <code>vipw</code> ), and <code>vipw</code>
<b>Installed directory:</b>	<code>/etc/default</code>

## Short Descriptions

<b>chage</b>	Used to change the maximum number of days between obligatory password changes
<b>chfn</b>	Used to change a user's full name and other information
<b>chgpaswd</b>	Used to update group passwords in batch mode
<b>chpasswd</b>	Used to update user passwords in batch mode
<b>chsh</b>	Used to change a user's default login shell
<b>expiry</b>	Checks and enforces the current password expiration policy
<b>faillog</b>	Is used to examine the log of login failures, to set a maximum number of failures before an account is blocked, or to reset the failure count
<b>gpaswd</b>	Is used to add and delete members and administrators to groups
<b>groupadd</b>	Creates a group with the given name
<b>groupdel</b>	Deletes the group with the given name
<b>groupmems</b>	Allows a user to administer his/her own group membership list without the requirement of super user privileges.
<b>groupmod</b>	Is used to modify the given group's name or GID
<b>grpck</b>	Verifies the integrity of the group files <code>/etc/group</code> and <code>/etc/gshadow</code>
<b>grpconv</b>	Creates or updates the shadow group file from the normal group file
<b>grpunconv</b>	Updates <code>/etc/group</code> from <code>/etc/gshadow</code> and then deletes the latter
<b>lastlog</b>	Reports the most recent login of all users or of a given user
<b>login</b>	Is used by the system to let users sign on
<b>logoutd</b>	Is a daemon used to enforce restrictions on log-on time and ports
<b>newgrp</b>	Is used to change the current GID during a login session
<b>newusers</b>	Is used to create or update an entire series of user accounts
<b>nologin</b>	Displays a message that an account is not available. Designed to be used as the default shell for accounts that have been disabled
<b>passwd</b>	Is used to change the password for a user or group account
<b>pwck</b>	Verifies the integrity of the password files <code>/etc/passwd</code> and <code>/etc/shadow</code>
<b>pwconv</b>	Creates or updates the shadow password file from the normal password file
<b>pwunconv</b>	Updates <code>/etc/passwd</code> from <code>/etc/shadow</code> and then deletes the latter
<b>sg</b>	Executes a given command while the user's GID is set to that of the given group
<b>su</b>	Runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs
<b>useradd</b>	Creates a new user with the given name, or updates the default new-user information
<b>userdel</b>	Deletes the given user account
<b>usermod</b>	Is used to modify the given user's login name, User Identification (UID), shell, initial group, home directory, etc.
<b>vigr</b>	Edits the <code>/etc/group</code> or <code>/etc/gshadow</code> files
<b>vipw</b>	Edits the <code>/etc/passwd</code> or <code>/etc/shadow</code> files

## 6.26. Psmisc-22.20

The Psmisc package contains programs for displaying information about running processes.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.2 MB

### 6.26.1. Installation of Psmisc

Prepare Psmisc for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Finally, move the **killall** and **fuser** programs to the location specified by the FHS:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/fuser /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/killall /bin
```

### 6.26.2. Contents of Psmisc

**Installed programs:** fuser, killall, peekfd, prtstat, pstree, and pstree.x11 (link to pstree)

#### Short Descriptions

<b>fuser</b>	Reports the Process IDs (PIDs) of processes that use the given files or file systems
<b>killall</b>	Kills processes by name; it sends a signal to all processes running any of the given commands
<b>peekfd</b>	Peek at file descriptors of a running process, given its PID
<b>prtstat</b>	Prints information about a process
<b>pstree</b>	Displays running processes as a tree
<b>pstree.x11</b>	Same as <b>pstree</b> , except that it waits for confirmation before exiting

## 6.27. Procps-ng-3.3.9

The Procps-ng package contains programs for monitoring processes.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 13 MB

### 6.27.1. Installation of Procps-ng

Now prepare procps-ng for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --exec-prefix= \
            --libdir=/usr/lib \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/procps-ng-3.3.9 \
            --disable-static \
            --disable-kill
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-kill*

This switch disables building the kill command that was installed in the util-linux package.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The test suite needs some custom modifications for LFS. Remove the test that fails when scripting does not use a tty device. To run the test suite, run the following commands:

```
sed -i -r 's|(pmap_initname)\\\$|\1|' testsuite/pmap.test/pmap.exp
```

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Finally, move essential files to a location that can be found if /usr is not mounted.

```
mv -v /usr/bin/pidof /bin
mv -v /usr/lib/libprocps.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libprocps.so) /usr/lib/libprocps.so
```

### 6.27.2. Contents of Procps-ng

**Installed programs:** free, pgrep, pidof, pkill, pmap, ps, pwdx, slabtop, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w, and, watch

**Installed library:** libprocps.so

#### Short Descriptions

**free** Reports the amount of free and used memory (both physical and swap memory) in the system

<b>pgrep</b>	Looks up processes based on their name and other attributes
<b>pidof</b>	Looks up processes based on their name and other attributes
<b>pkill</b>	Signals processes based on their name and other attributes
<b>pmap</b>	Reports the memory map of the given process
<b>ps</b>	Lists the current running processes
<b>pwdx</b>	Reports the current working directory of a process
<b>slabtop</b>	Displays detailed kernel slab cache information in real time
<b>sysctl</b>	Modifies kernel parameters at run time
<b>load</b>	Prints a graph of the current system load average
<b>top</b>	Displays a list of the most CPU intensive processes; it provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time
<b>uptime</b>	Reports how long the system has been running, how many users are logged on, and the system load averages
<b>vmstat</b>	Reports virtual memory statistics, giving information about processes, memory, paging, block Input/Output (IO), traps, and CPU activity
<b>w</b>	Shows which users are currently logged on, where, and since when
<b>watch</b>	Runs a given command repeatedly, displaying the first screen-full of its output; this allows a user to watch the output change over time
<code>libprocps</code>	Contains the functions used by most programs in this package

## 6.28. E2fsprogs-1.42.9

The E2fsprogs package contains the utilities for handling the `ext2` file system. It also supports the `ext3` and `ext4` journaling file systems.

**Approximate build time:** 1.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 64 MB

### 6.28.1. Installation of E2fsprogs

First fix a problem with running regression tests in the LFS chroot environment:

```
sed -i -e 's|^LD_LIBRARY_PATH.*|&:/tools/lib|' tests/test_config
```

The E2fsprogs documentation recommends that the package be built in a subdirectory of the source tree:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare E2fsprogs for compilation:

```
LIBS=-L/tools/lib \
CFLAGS=-I/tools/include \
PKG_CONFIG_PATH=/tools/lib/pkgconfig \
../configure --prefix=/usr \
              --with-root-prefix="" \
              --enable-elf-shlibs \
              --disable-libblkid \
              --disable-libuuid \
              --disable-uuid \
              --disable-fsck
```

**The meaning of the environment variable and configure options:**

*PKG\_CONFIG\_PATH*, *LIBS*, *CFLAGS*

These variables enable e2fsprogs to be built using the Section 5.33, “Util-linux-2.24.1” package built earlier.

*--with-root-prefix=""*

Certain programs (such as the **e2fsck** program) are considered essential programs. When, for example, `/usr` is not mounted, these programs still need to be available. They belong in directories like `/lib` and `/sbin`. If this option is not passed to E2fsprogs' `configure`, the programs are installed into the `/usr` directory.

*--enable-elf-shlibs*

This creates the shared libraries which some programs in this package use.

*--disable-\**

This prevents E2fsprogs from building and installing the `libuuid` and `libblkid` libraries, the `uuid` daemon, and the **fsck** wrapper, as Util-Linux installed all of them earlier.

Compile the package:

```
make
```



To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

One of the E2fsprogs tests will attempt to allocate 256 MB of memory. If you do not have significantly more RAM than this, be sure to enable sufficient swap space for the test. See Section 2.3, “Creating a File System on the Partition” and Section 2.4, “Mounting the New Partition” for details on creating and enabling swap space. Additionally, three tests try to allocate a two terabyte partition and will fail unless you have at least that much unused disk space available.

Install the binaries, documentation, and shared libraries:

```
make install
```

Install the static libraries and headers:

```
make install-libs
```

Make the installed static libraries writable so debugging symbols can be removed later:

```
chmod -v u+w /usr/lib/{libcom_err,libe2p,libext2fs,libss}.a
```

This package installs a gzipped `.info` file but doesn't update the system-wide `dir` file. Unzip this file and then update the system `dir` file using the following commands.

```
gunzip -v /usr/share/info/libext2fs.info.gz  
install-info --dir-file=/usr/share/info/dir /usr/share/info/libext2fs.info
```

If desired, create and install some additional documentation by issuing the following commands:

```
makeinfo -o doc/com_err.info ../lib/et/com_err.texinfo  
install -v -m644 doc/com_err.info /usr/share/info  
install-info --dir-file=/usr/share/info/dir /usr/share/info/com_err.info
```

## 6.28.2. Contents of E2fsprogs

<b>Installed programs:</b>	badblocks, chatter, compile_et, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2freefrag, e2fsck, e2image, e2label, e2undo, e4defrag, filefrag, fsck.ext2, fsck.ext3, fsck.ext4, fsck.ext4dev, logsave, lsattr, mk_cmds, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mkfs.ext3, mkfs.ext4, mkfs.ext4dev, resize2fs, and tune2fs
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libcom_err.{a,so}, libe2p.{a,so}, libext2fs.{a,so}, libquota.a, and libss.{a,so}
<b>Installed directory:</b>	/usr/include/e2p, /usr/include/et, /usr/include/ext2fs, /usr/include/quota, /usr/include/ss, /usr/share/et, /usr/share/ss

## Short Descriptions

<b>badblocks</b>	Searches a device (usually a disk partition) for bad blocks
<b>chattr</b>	Changes the attributes of files on an ext2 file system; it also changes ext3 file systems, the journaling version of ext2 file systems
<b>compile_et</b>	An error table compiler; it converts a table of error-code names and messages into a C source file suitable for use with the com_err library
<b>debugfs</b>	A file system debugger; it can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system

<b>dumpe2fs</b>	Prints the super block and blocks group information for the file system present on a given device
<b>e2freefrag</b>	Reports free space fragmentation information
<b>e2fsck</b>	Is used to check, and optionally repair <code>ext2</code> file systems and <code>ext3</code> file systems
<b>e2image</b>	Is used to save critical <code>ext2</code> file system data to a file
<b>e2label</b>	Displays or changes the file system label on the <code>ext2</code> file system present on a given device
<b>e2undo</b>	Replays the undo log <code>undo_log</code> for an <code>ext2/ext3/ext4</code> filesystem found on a device. This can be used to undo a failed operation by an <code>e2fsprogs</code> program.
<b>e4defrag</b>	Online defragmenter for <code>ext4</code> filesystems
<b>filefrag</b>	Reports on how badly fragmented a particular file might be
<b>fsck.ext2</b>	By default checks <code>ext2</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>e2fsck</b> .
<b>fsck.ext3</b>	By default checks <code>ext3</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>e2fsck</b> .
<b>fsck.ext4</b>	By default checks <code>ext4</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>e2fsck</b> .
<b>fsck.ext4dev</b>	By default checks <code>ext4</code> development file systems. This is a hard link to <b>e2fsck</b> .
<b>logsave</b>	Saves the output of a command in a log file
<b>lsattr</b>	Lists the attributes of files on a second extended file system
<b>mk_cmds</b>	Converts a table of command names and help messages into a C source file suitable for use with the <code>libss</code> subsystem library
<b>mke2fs</b>	Creates an <code>ext2</code> or <code>ext3</code> file system on the given device
<b>mkfs.ext2</b>	By default creates <code>ext2</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>mke2fs</b> .
<b>mkfs.ext3</b>	By default creates <code>ext3</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>mke2fs</b> .
<b>mkfs.ext4</b>	By default creates <code>ext4</code> file systems. This is a hard link to <b>mke2fs</b> .
<b>mkfs.ext4dev</b>	By default creates <code>ext4</code> development file systems. This is a hard link to <b>mke2fs</b> .
<b>mklost+found</b>	Used to create a <code>lost+found</code> directory on an <code>ext2</code> file system; it pre-allocates disk blocks to this directory to lighten the task of <b>e2fsck</b>
<b>resize2fs</b>	Can be used to enlarge or shrink an <code>ext2</code> file system
<b>tune2fs</b>	Adjusts tunable file system parameters on an <code>ext2</code> file system
<code>libcom_err</code>	The common error display routine
<code>libe2p</code>	Used by <b>dumpe2fs</b> , <b>chattr</b> , and <b>lsattr</b>
<code>libext2fs</code>	Contains routines to enable user-level programs to manipulate an <code>ext2</code> file system
<code>libquota</code>	Provides an interface for creating and updating quota files and <code>ext4</code> superblock fields
<code>libss</code>	Used by <b>debugfs</b>

## 6.29. Coreutils-8.22

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

**Approximate build time:** 3.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 116 MB

### 6.29.1. Installation of Coreutils

POSIX requires that programs from Coreutils recognize character boundaries correctly even in multibyte locales. The following patch fixes this non-compliance and other internationalization-related bugs:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../coreutils-8.22-i18n-4.patch
```



#### Note

In the past, many bugs were found in this patch. When reporting new bugs to Coreutils maintainers, please check first if they are reproducible without this patch.

Now prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```
FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1 ./configure \
    --prefix=/usr \
    --enable-no-install-program=kill,uptime
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--enable-no-install-program=kill,uptime
```

The purpose of this switch is to prevent Coreutils from installing binaries that will be installed by other packages later.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Skip down to “Install the package” if not running the test suite.

Now the test suite is ready to be run. First, run the tests that are meant to be run as user `root`:

```
make NON_ROOT_USERNAME=nobody check-root
```

We're going to run the remainder of the tests as the `nobody` user. Certain tests, however, require that the user be a member of more than one group. So that these tests are not skipped we'll add a temporary group and make the user `nobody` a part of it:

```
echo "dummy:x:1000:nobody" >> /etc/group
```

Fix some of the permissions so that the non-root user can compile and run the tests:

```
chown -Rv nobody .
```

Now run the tests. Make sure the `PATH` in the `su` environment includes `/tools/bin`.

```
su nobody -s /bin/bash \
    -c "PATH=$PATH make RUN_EXPENSIVE_TESTS=yes check"
```

Remove the temporary group:

```
sed -i '/dummy/d' /etc/group
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move programs to the locations specified by the FHS:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/{cat,chgrp,chmod,chown,cp,date,dd,df,echo} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/{false,ln,ls,mkdir,mknod,mv,pwd,rm} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/{rmdir,stty,sync,true,uname} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/chroot /usr/sbin
mv -v /usr/share/man/man1/chroot.1 /usr/share/man/man8/chroot.8
sed -i s/"1"/"8"/1 /usr/share/man/man8/chroot.8
```

## 6.29.2. Contents of Coreutils

**Installed programs:** [, base64, basename, cat, chcon, chgrp, chmod, chown, chroot, cksum, comm, cp, csplit, cut, date, dd, df, dir, dircolors, dirname, du, echo, env, expand, expr, factor, false, fmt, fold, groups, head, hostid, id, install, join, link, ln, logname, ls, md5sum, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mktemp, mv, nice, nl, nohup, nproc, numfmt, od, paste, pathchk, pinky, pr, printenv, printf, ptx, pwd, readlink, realpath, rm, rmdir, runcon, seq, sha1sum, sha224sum, sha256sum, sha384sum, sha512sum, shred, shuf, sleep, sort, split, stat, stdbuf, stty, sum, sync, tac, tail, tee, test, timeout, touch, tr, true, truncate, tsort, tty, uname, unexpand, uniq, unlink, users, vdir, wc, who, whoami, and yes

**Installed library:** libstdbuf.so

**Installed directory:** /usr/lib/coreutils

## Short Descriptions

**base64** Encodes and decodes data according to the base64 (RFC 3548) specification

**basename** Strips any path and a given suffix from a file name

**cat** Concatenates files to standard output

**chcon** Changes security context for files and directories

**chgrp** Changes the group ownership of files and directories

**chmod** Changes the permissions of each file to the given mode; the mode can be either a symbolic representation of the changes to make or an octal number representing the new permissions

**chown** Changes the user and/or group ownership of files and directories

**chroot** Runs a command with the specified directory as the / directory

**cksum** Prints the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) checksum and the byte counts of each specified file

**comm** Compares two sorted files, outputting in three columns the lines that are unique and the lines that are common

**cp** Copies files

**csplit** Splits a given file into several new files, separating them according to given patterns or line numbers and outputting the byte count of each new file

<b>cut</b>	Prints sections of lines, selecting the parts according to given fields or positions
<b>date</b>	Displays the current time in the given format, or sets the system date
<b>dd</b>	Copies a file using the given block size and count, while optionally performing conversions on it
<b>df</b>	Reports the amount of disk space available (and used) on all mounted file systems, or only on the file systems holding the selected files
<b>dir</b>	Lists the contents of each given directory (the same as the <b>ls</b> command)
<b>dircolors</b>	Outputs commands to set the <code>LS_COLOR</code> environment variable to change the color scheme used by <b>ls</b>
<b>dirname</b>	Strips the non-directory suffix from a file name
<b>du</b>	Reports the amount of disk space used by the current directory, by each of the given directories (including all subdirectories) or by each of the given files
<b>echo</b>	Displays the given strings
<b>env</b>	Runs a command in a modified environment
<b>expand</b>	Converts tabs to spaces
<b>expr</b>	Evaluates expressions
<b>factor</b>	Prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers
<b>false</b>	Does nothing, unsuccessfully; it always exits with a status code indicating failure
<b>fmt</b>	Reformats the paragraphs in the given files
<b>fold</b>	Wraps the lines in the given files
<b>groups</b>	Reports a user's group memberships
<b>head</b>	Prints the first ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
<b>hostid</b>	Reports the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) of the host
<b>id</b>	Reports the effective user ID, group ID, and group memberships of the current user or specified user
<b>install</b>	Copies files while setting their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group
<b>join</b>	Joins the lines that have identical join fields from two separate files
<b>link</b>	Creates a hard link with the given name to a file
<b>ln</b>	Makes hard links or soft (symbolic) links between files
<b>logname</b>	Reports the current user's login name
<b>ls</b>	Lists the contents of each given directory
<b>md5sum</b>	Reports or checks Message Digest 5 (MD5) checksums
<b>mkdir</b>	Creates directories with the given names
<b>mkfifo</b>	Creates First-In, First-Outs (FIFOs), a “named pipe” in UNIX parlance, with the given names
<b>mknod</b>	Creates device nodes with the given names; a device node is a character special file, a block special file, or a FIFO
<b>mktemp</b>	Creates temporary files in a secure manner; it is used in scripts
<b>mv</b>	Moves or renames files or directories
<b>nice</b>	Runs a program with modified scheduling priority

<b>nl</b>	Numbers the lines from the given files
<b>nohup</b>	Runs a command immune to hangups, with its output redirected to a log file
<b>nproc</b>	Prints the number of processing units available to a process
<b>numfmt</b>	Converts numbers to or from human-readable strings
<b>od</b>	Dumps files in octal and other formats
<b>paste</b>	Merges the given files, joining sequentially corresponding lines side by side, separated by tab characters
<b>pathchk</b>	Checks if file names are valid or portable
<b>pinky</b>	Is a lightweight finger client; it reports some information about the given users
<b>pr</b>	Paginates and columnates files for printing
<b>printenv</b>	Prints the environment
<b>printf</b>	Prints the given arguments according to the given format, much like the C printf function
<b>ptx</b>	Produces a permuted index from the contents of the given files, with each keyword in its context
<b>pwd</b>	Reports the name of the current working directory
<b>readlink</b>	Reports the value of the given symbolic link
<b>realpath</b>	Prints the resolved path
<b>rm</b>	Removes files or directories
<b>rmdir</b>	Removes directories if they are empty
<b>runcon</b>	Runs a command with specified security context
<b>seq</b>	Prints a sequence of numbers within a given range and with a given increment
<b>sha1sum</b>	Prints or checks 160-bit Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA1) checksums
<b>sha224sum</b>	Prints or checks 224-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
<b>sha256sum</b>	Prints or checks 256-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
<b>sha384sum</b>	Prints or checks 384-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
<b>sha512sum</b>	Prints or checks 512-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
<b>shred</b>	Overwrites the given files repeatedly with complex patterns, making it difficult to recover the data
<b>shuf</b>	Shuffles lines of text
<b>sleep</b>	Pauses for the given amount of time
<b>sort</b>	Sorts the lines from the given files
<b>split</b>	Splits the given file into pieces, by size or by number of lines
<b>stat</b>	Displays file or filesystem status
<b>stdbuf</b>	Runs commands with altered buffering operations for its standard streams
<b>stty</b>	Sets or reports terminal line settings
<b>sum</b>	Prints checksum and block counts for each given file
<b>sync</b>	Flushes file system buffers; it forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block
<b>tac</b>	Concatenates the given files in reverse

<b>tail</b>	Prints the last ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
<b>tee</b>	Reads from standard input while writing both to standard output and to the given files
<b>test</b>	Compares values and checks file types
<b>timeout</b>	Runs a command with a time limit
<b>touch</b>	Changes file timestamps, setting the access and modification times of the given files to the current time; files that do not exist are created with zero length
<b>tr</b>	Translates, squeezes, and deletes the given characters from standard input
<b>true</b>	Does nothing, successfully; it always exits with a status code indicating success
<b>truncate</b>	Shrinks or expands a file to the specified size
<b>tsort</b>	Performs a topological sort; it writes a completely ordered list according to the partial ordering in a given file
<b>tty</b>	Reports the file name of the terminal connected to standard input
<b>uname</b>	Reports system information
<b>unexpand</b>	Converts spaces to tabs
<b>uniq</b>	Discards all but one of successive identical lines
<b>unlink</b>	Removes the given file
<b>users</b>	Reports the names of the users currently logged on
<b>vdir</b>	Is the same as <b>ls -l</b>
<b>wc</b>	Reports the number of lines, words, and bytes for each given file, as well as a total line when more than one file is given
<b>who</b>	Reports who is logged on
<b>whoami</b>	Reports the user name associated with the current effective user ID
<b>yes</b>	Repeatedly outputs “y” or a given string until killed
<code>libstdbuf.so</code>	Library used by <b>stdbuf</b>

## 6.30. Iana-Etc-2.30

The Iana-Etc package provides data for network services and protocols.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.2 MB

### 6.30.1. Installation of Iana-Etc

The following command converts the raw data provided by IANA into the correct formats for the `/etc/protocols` and `/etc/services` data files:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.30.2. Contents of Iana-Etc

**Installed files:** `/etc/protocols` and `/etc/services`

#### Short Descriptions

<code>/etc/protocols</code>	Describes the various DARPA Internet protocols that are available from the TCP/IP subsystem
<code>/etc/services</code>	Provides a mapping between friendly textual names for internet services, and their underlying assigned port numbers and protocol types



## 6.31. M4-1.4.17

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 30 MB

### 6.31.1. Installation of M4

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.31.2. Contents of M4

**Installed program:** m4

#### Short Descriptions

**m4** copies the given files while expanding the macros that they contain. These macros are either built-in or user-defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides performing macro expansion, **m4** has built-in functions for including named files, running Unix commands, performing integer arithmetic, manipulating text, recursion, etc. The **m4** program can be used either as a front-end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

## 6.32. Flex-2.5.38

The Flex package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 39 MB

### 6.32.1. Installation of Flex

First, skip running three regression tests that require bison.

```
sed -i -e '/test-bison/d' tests/Makefile.in
```

Prepare Flex for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/flex-2.5.38
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (about 0.5 SBU), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

A few programs do not know about **flex** yet and try to run its predecessor, **lex**. To support those programs, create a wrapper script named **lex** that calls **flex** in **lex** emulation mode:

```
cat > /usr/bin/lex << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /usr/bin/lex

exec /usr/bin/flex -l "$@"

# End /usr/bin/lex
EOF
chmod -v 755 /usr/bin/lex
```

### 6.32.2. Contents of Flex

**Installed programs:** flex, flex++ (link to flex), and lex

**Installed libraries:** libfl.{so,a} and libfl\_pic.{so,a}

**Installed directories:** /usr/share/doc/flex-2.5.38

### Short Descriptions

**flex** A tool for generating programs that recognize patterns in text; it allows for the versatility to specify the rules for pattern-finding, eradicating the need to develop a specialized program

**flex++** An extension of flex, is used for generating C++ code and classes. It is a symbolic link to **flex**

**lex** A script that runs **flex** in **lex** emulation mode

`libfl.so` The flex library

## 6.33. Bison-3.0.2

The Bison package contains a parser generator.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 31 MB

### 6.33.1. Installation of Bison

Prepare Bison for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (about 0.5 SBU), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.33.2. Contents of Bison

**Installed programs:** bison and yacc

**Installed library:** liby.a

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/bison

#### Short Descriptions

**bison** Generates, from a series of rules, a program for analyzing the structure of text files; Bison is a replacement for Yacc (Yet Another Compiler Compiler)

**yacc** A wrapper for **bison**, meant for programs that still call **yacc** instead of **bison**; it calls **bison** with the `-y` option

**liby.a** The Yacc library containing implementations of Yacc-compatible `yyerror` and `main` functions; this library is normally not very useful, but POSIX requires it

## 6.34. Grep-2.16

The Grep package contains programs for searching through files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 30 MB

### 6.34.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.34.2. Contents of Grep

**Installed programs:** egrep, fgrep, and grep

#### Short Descriptions

**egrep** Prints lines matching an extended regular expression

**fgrep** Prints lines matching a list of fixed strings

**grep** Prints lines matching a basic regular expression

## 6.35. Readline-6.2

The Readline package is a set of libraries that offers command-line editing and history capabilities.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 17.2 MB

### 6.35.1. Installation of Readline

Reinstalling Readline will cause the old libraries to be moved to <libraryname>.old. While this is normally not a problem, in some cases it can trigger a linking bug in **ldconfig**. This can be avoided by issuing the following two seds:

```
sed -i '/MV.*old/d' Makefile.in
sed -i '/{OLDSUFF}/c:' support/shlib-install
```

Apply a patch to fix a known bug that has been fixed upstream:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../readline-6.2-fixes-2.patch
```

Prepare Readline for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make SHLIB_LIBS=-lncurses
```

**The meaning of the make option:**

```
SHLIB_LIBS=-lncurses
```

This option forces Readline to link against the `libncurses` (really, `libncursesw`) library.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Now move the dynamic libraries to a more appropriate location and fix up some symbolic links:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/lib{readline,history}.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libreadline.so) /usr/lib/libreadline.so
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libhistory.so) /usr/lib/libhistory.so
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/readline-6.2
install -v -m644 doc/*.{ps,pdf,html,dvi} \
    /usr/share/doc/readline-6.2
```

### 6.35.2. Contents of Readline

**Installed libraries:** libhistory.{a,so}, and libreadline.{a,so}

**Installed directories:** /usr/include/readline, /usr/share/readline, /usr/share/doc/readline-6.2

## Short Descriptions

<code>libhistory</code>	Provides a consistent user interface for recalling lines of history
<code>libreadline</code>	Aids in the consistency of user interface across discrete programs that need to provide a command line interface

## 6.36. Bash-4.2

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

**Approximate build time:** 1.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 45 MB

### 6.36.1. Installation of Bash

First, apply the following patch to fix various bugs that have been addressed upstream:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bash-4.2-fixes-12.patch
```

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          \
            --bindir=/bin          \
            --htmldir=/usr/share/doc/bash-4.2 \
            --without-bash-malloc   \
            --with-installed-readline
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--htmldir*

This option designates the directory into which HTML formatted documentation will be installed.

*--with-installed-readline*

This option tells Bash to use the `readline` library that is already installed on the system rather than using its own `readline` version.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Skip down to “Install the package” if not running the test suite.

To prepare the tests, ensure that the `nobody` user can write to the sources tree:

```
chown -Rv nobody .
```

Now, run the tests as the `nobody` user:

```
su nobody -s /bin/bash -c "PATH=$PATH make tests"
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Run the newly compiled `bash` program (replacing the one that is currently being executed):

```
exec /bin/bash --login +h
```



#### Note

The parameters used make the `bash` process an interactive login shell and continue to disable hashing so that new programs are found as they become available.



## 6.36.2. Contents of Bash

**Installed programs:** bash, bashbug, and sh (link to bash)  
**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/bash-4.2

### Short Descriptions

**bash** A widely-used command interpreter; it performs many types of expansions and substitutions on a given command line before executing it, thus making this interpreter a powerful tool

**bashbug** A shell script to help the user compose and mail standard formatted bug reports concerning **bash**

**sh** A symlink to the **bash** program; when invoked as **sh**, **bash** tries to mimic the startup behavior of historical versions of **sh** as closely as possible, while conforming to the POSIX standard as well

## 6.37. Bc-1.06.95

The Bc package contains an arbitrary precision numeric processing language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3 MB

### 6.37.1. Installation of Bc

Prepare Bc for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --with-readline \
            --infodir=/usr/share/info \
            --mandir=/usr/share/man
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--with-readline*

This option tells Bc to use the `readline` library that is already installed on the system rather than using its own `readline` version.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test bc, run the commands below. There is quite a bit of output, so you may want to redirect it to a file. There are a very small percentage of tests (10 of 12,144) that will indicate a roundoff error at the last digit.

```
echo "quit" | ./bc/bc -l Test/checklib.b
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.37.2. Contents of Bc

**Installed programs:** bc and dc

#### Short Descriptions

**bc** is a command line calculator

**dc** is a reverse-polish command line calculator

## 6.38. Libtool-2.4.2

The Libtool package contains the GNU generic library support script. It wraps the complexity of using shared libraries in a consistent, portable interface.

**Approximate build time:** 3.0 SBU

**Required disk space:** 37 MB

### 6.38.1. Installation of Libtool

Prepare Libtool for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (about 3.0 SBU), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.38.2. Contents of Libtool

**Installed programs:** libtool and libtoolize

**Installed libraries:** libltdl.{a,so}

**Installed directories:** /usr/include/libltdl, /usr/share/libtool

### Short Descriptions

<b>libtool</b>	Provides generalized library-building support services
<b>libtoolize</b>	Provides a standard way to add <b>libtool</b> support to a package
<code>libltdl</code>	Hides the various difficulties of dlopening libraries

## 6.39. GDBM-1.11

The GDBM package contains the GNU Database Manager. This is a disk file format database which stores key/data-pairs in single files. The actual data of any record being stored is indexed by a unique key, which can be retrieved in less time than if it was stored in a text file.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.5 MB

### 6.39.1. Installation of GDBM

Prepare GDBM for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-libgdbm-compat
```

**The meaning of the configure option:**

`--enable-libgdbm-compat`

This switch enables the libgdbm compatibility library to be built, as some packages outside of LFS may require the older DBM routines it provides.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.39.2. Contents of GDBM

**Installed program:** testgdbm

**Installed libraries:** libgdbm.{so,a} and libgdbm\_compat.{so,a}

#### Short Descriptions

**testgdbm** Tests and modifies a GDBM database

**libgdbm** Contains functions to manipulate a hashed database

## 6.40. Expat-2.1.0

The Expat package contains a stream oriented C library for parsing XML.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 7.5 MB

### 6.40.1. Installation of Expat

Prepare Expat for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
install -v -dm755 /usr/share/doc/expat-2.1.0
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,png,css} /usr/share/doc/expat-2.1.0
```

### 6.40.2. Contents of Expat

**Installed program:** xmlwf  
**Installed libraries:** libexpat.{so,a}  
**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/expat-2.1.0

#### Short Descriptions

**xmlwf** is a non-validating utility to check whether or not XML documents are well formed.

**libexpat** contains API functions for parsing XML.

## 6.41. Inetutils-1.9.2

The Inetutils package contains programs for basic networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 27 MB

### 6.41.1. Installation of Inetutils

Create a definition to allow the **ifconfig** program to build properly.

```
echo '#define PATH_PROCNET_DEV "/proc/net/dev"' >> ifconfig/system/linux.h
```

Prepare Inetutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
  --localstatedir=/var \
  --disable-logger \
  --disable-syslogd \
  --disable-whois \
  --disable-servers
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-logger*

This option prevents Inetutils from installing the **logger** program, which is used by scripts to pass messages to the System Log Daemon. Do not install it because Util-linux installed a version earlier.

*--disable-syslogd*

This option prevents Inetutils from installing the System Log Daemon, which is installed with the Syslogd package.

*--disable-whois*

This option disables the building of the Inetutils **whois** client, which is out of date. Instructions for a better **whois** client are in the BLFS book.

*--disable-servers*

This disables the installation of the various network servers included as part of the Inetutils package. These servers are deemed not appropriate in a basic LFS system. Some are insecure by nature and are only considered safe on trusted networks. Note that better replacements are available for many of these servers.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move some programs so they are available if `/usr` is not accessible:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/{hostname,ping,ping6,traceroute} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/ifconfig /sbin
```

## 6.41.2. Contents of Inetutils

**Installed programs:** ftp, ifconfig, hostname, ping, ping6, rcp, rexec, rlogin, rsh, talk, telnet, tftp, and traceroute

### Short Descriptions

<b>ftp</b>	Is the file transfer protocol program
<b>ifconfig</b>	Manages network interfaces
<b>hostname</b>	Reports or sets the name of the host
<b>ping</b>	Sends echo-request packets and reports how long the replies take
<b>ping6</b>	A version of <b>ping</b> for IPv6 networks
<b>rcp</b>	Performs remote file copy
<b>rexec</b>	Executes commands on a remote host
<b>rlogin</b>	Performs remote login
<b>rsh</b>	Runs a remote shell
<b>talk</b>	Is used to chat with another user
<b>telnet</b>	An interface to the TELNET protocol
<b>tftp</b>	A trivial file transfer program
<b>traceroute</b>	Traces the route your packets take from the host you are working on to another host on a network, showing all the intermediate hops (gateways) along the way

## 6.42. Perl-5.18.2

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

**Approximate build time:** 6.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 246 MB

### 6.42.1. Installation of Perl

First create a basic `/etc/hosts` file to be referenced in one of Perl's configuration files as well as the optional test suite:

```
echo "127.0.0.1 localhost $(hostname)" > /etc/hosts
```

This version of Perl now builds the `Compress::Raw::Zlib` module. By default Perl will use an internal copy of the Zlib source for the build. Issue the following command so that Perl will use the Zlib library installed on the system:

```
sed -i -e "s|BUILD_ZLIB\s*= True|BUILD_ZLIB = False|" \
    -e "s|INCLUDE\s*= ./zlib-src|INCLUDE      = /usr/include|" \
    -e "s|LIB\s*= ./zlib-src|LIB          = /usr/lib|" \
    cpan/Compress-Raw-Zlib/config.in
```

To have full control over the way Perl is set up, you can remove the “-des” options from the following command and hand-pick the way this package is built. Alternatively, use the command exactly as below to use the defaults that Perl auto-detects:

```
sh Configure -des -Dprefix=/usr \
              -Dvendorprefix=/usr \
              -Dman1dir=/usr/share/man/man1 \
              -Dman3dir=/usr/share/man/man3 \
              -Dpager="/usr/bin/less -isR" \
              -Duseshrplib
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

`-Dvendorprefix=/usr`

This ensures **perl** knows how to tell packages where they should install their perl modules.

`-Dpager="/usr/bin/less -isR"`

This corrects an error in the way that **perldoc** invokes the **less** program.

`-Dman1dir=/usr/share/man/man1 -Dman3dir=/usr/share/man/man3`

Since Groff is not installed yet, **Configure** thinks that we do not want man pages for Perl. Issuing these parameters overrides this decision.

`-Duseshrplib`

Build a shared libperl needed by some perl modules.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (approximately 2.5 SBU), issue:

```
make -k test
```



Install the package:

```
make install
```

## 6.42.2. Contents of Perl

**Installed programs:** a2p, c2ph, config\_data, corelist, cpan, cpan2dist, cpanp, cpanp-run-perl, enc2xs, find2perl, h2ph, h2xs, instmodsh, json\_pp, libnetcfg, perl, perl5.18.2 (link to perl), perlbug, perldoc, perlivp, perlthanks (link to perlbug), piconv, pl2pm, pod2html, pod2latex, pod2man, pod2text, pod2usage, podchecker, podselect, prove, psed (link to s2p), pstruct (link to c2ph), ptar, ptardiff, ptargrep, s2p, shasum, splain, xsubpp, and zipdetails

**Installed libraries:** Several hundred which cannot all be listed here

**Installed directory:** /usr/lib/perl5

### Short Descriptions

**a2p** Translates awk to Perl

**c2ph** Dumps C structures as generated from `cc -g -S`

**config\_data** Queries or changes configuration of Perl modules

**corelist** A commandline frontend to Module::CoreList

**cpan** Interact with the Comprehensive Perl Archive Network (CPAN) from the command line

**cpan2dist** The CPANPLUS distribution creator

**cpanp** The CPANPLUS launcher

**cpanp-run-perl** Perl script that is used to enable flushing of the output buffer after each write in spawned processes

**enc2xs** Builds a Perl extension for the Encode module from either Unicode Character Mappings or Tcl Encoding Files

**find2perl** Translates **find** commands to Perl

**h2ph** Converts .h C header files to .ph Perl header files

**h2xs** Converts .h C header files to Perl extensions

**instmodsh** Shell script for examining installed Perl modules, and can even create a tarball from an installed module

**json\_pp** Converts data between certain input and output formats

**libnetcfg** Can be used to configure the libnet Perl module

**perl** Combines some of the best features of C, **sed**, **awk** and **sh** into a single swiss-army language

**perl5.18.2** A hard link to **perl**

**perlbug** Used to generate bug reports about Perl, or the modules that come with it, and mail them

**perldoc** Displays a piece of documentation in pod format that is embedded in the Perl installation tree or in a Perl script

**perlivp** The Perl Installation Verification Procedure; it can be used to verify that Perl and its libraries have been installed correctly

<b>perlthanks</b>	Used to generate thank you messages to mail to the Perl developers
<b>picnv</b>	A Perl version of the character encoding converter <b>iconv</b>
<b>pl2pm</b>	A rough tool for converting Perl4 .pl files to Perl5 .pm modules
<b>pod2html</b>	Converts files from pod format to HTML format
<b>pod2latex</b>	Converts files from pod format to LaTeX format
<b>pod2man</b>	Converts pod data to formatted *roff input
<b>pod2text</b>	Converts pod data to formatted ASCII text
<b>pod2usage</b>	Prints usage messages from embedded pod docs in files
<b>podchecker</b>	Checks the syntax of pod format documentation files
<b>podselect</b>	Displays selected sections of pod documentation
<b>prove</b>	Command line tool for running tests against the Test::Harness module.
<b>psed</b>	A Perl version of the stream editor <b>sed</b>
<b>pstruct</b>	Dumps C structures as generated from <b>cc -g -S</b> stabs
<b>ptar</b>	A <b>tar</b> -like program written in Perl
<b>ptardiff</b>	A Perl program that compares an extracted archive with an unextracted one
<b>ptargrep</b>	A Perl program that applies pattern matching to the contents of files in a tar archive
<b>s2p</b>	Translates <b>sed</b> scripts to Perl
<b>shasum</b>	Prints or checks SHA checksums
<b>splain</b>	Is used to force verbose warning diagnostics in Perl
<b>xsubpp</b>	Converts Perl XS code into C code
<b>zipdetails</b>	Displays details about the internal structure of a Zip file

## 6.43. XML::Parser-2.42\_01

The XML::Parser module is a Perl interface to James Clark's XML parser, Expat.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.5 MB

### 6.43.1. Installation of XML::Parser

Prepare XML::Parser for compilation:

```
perl Makefile.PL
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.43.2. Contents of XML::Parser

**Installed Perl module:** Expat.so

#### Short Descriptions

Expat.so provides the Perl Expat interface.

## 6.44. Autoconf-2.69

The Autoconf package contains programs for producing shell scripts that can automatically configure source code.

**Approximate build time:** 4.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 17.1 MB

### 6.44.1. Installation of Autoconf

Prepare Autoconf for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

This takes a long time, about 4.7 SBUs. In addition, 6 tests are skipped that use Automake. For full test coverage, Autoconf can be re-tested after Automake has been installed.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.44.2. Contents of Autoconf

**Installed programs:** autoconf, autoheader, autom4te, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate, and ifnames

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/autoconf

#### Short Descriptions

<b>autoconf</b>	Produces shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of Unix-like systems. The configuration scripts it produces are independent—running them does not require the <b>autoconf</b> program.
<b>autoheader</b>	A tool for creating template files of C <i>#define</i> statements for configure to use
<b>autom4te</b>	A wrapper for the M4 macro processor
<b>autoreconf</b>	Automatically runs <b>autoconf</b> , <b>autoheader</b> , <b>aclocal</b> , <b>automake</b> , <b>gettextize</b> , and <b>libtoolize</b> in the correct order to save time when changes are made to <b>autoconf</b> and <b>automake</b> template files
<b>autoscan</b>	Helps to create a <code>configure.in</code> file for a software package; it examines the source files in a directory tree, searching them for common portability issues, and creates a <code>configure.scan</code> file that serves as a preliminary <code>configure.in</code> file for the package
<b>autoupdate</b>	Modifies a <code>configure.in</code> file that still calls <b>autoconf</b> macros by their old names to use the current macro names
<b>ifnames</b>	Helps when writing <code>configure.in</code> files for a software package; it prints the identifiers that the package uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help determine what <b>configure</b> needs to check for. It can also fill in gaps in a <code>configure.in</code> file generated by <b>autoscan</b>

## 6.45. Automake-1.14.1

The Automake package contains programs for generating Makefiles for use with Autoconf.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU (about 12 SBU with tests)

**Required disk space:** 100 MB

### 6.45.1. Installation of Automake

Prepare Automake for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --docdir=/usr/share/doc/automake-1.14.1
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

There are a couple of tests that incorrectly link to the wrong version of the flex library, so we temporarily work around the problem. Also, using the `-j4` make option speeds up the tests, even on systems with only one processor due to internal delays in individual tests. To test the results, issue:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libfl.{so,save}
ln -sv libfl.a /usr/lib/libfl.so
make -j4 check
rm -v /usr/lib/libfl.so
mv -v /usr/lib/libfl.{save,so}
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.45.2. Contents of Automake

**Installed programs:** `acinstall`, `aclocal`, `aclocal-1.14`, `automake`, `automake-1.14`, `compile`, `config.guess`, `config.sub`, `depcomp`, `install-sh`, `mdate-sh`, `missing`, `mkinstalldirs`, `py-compile`, and `ylwrap`

**Installed directories:** `/usr/share/aclocal-1.14`, `/usr/share/automake-1.14`, `/usr/share/doc/automake-1.14.1`

### Short Descriptions

<b>acinstall</b>	A script that installs <code>aclocal</code> -style M4 files
<b>aclocal</b>	Generates <code>aclocal.m4</code> files based on the contents of <code>configure.in</code> files
<b>aclocal-1.14</b>	A hard link to <b>aclocal</b>
<b>automake</b>	A tool for automatically generating <code>Makefile.in</code> files from <code>Makefile.am</code> files. To create all the <code>Makefile.in</code> files for a package, run this program in the top-level directory. By scanning the <code>configure.in</code> file, it automatically finds each appropriate <code>Makefile.am</code> file and generates the corresponding <code>Makefile.in</code> file
<b>automake-1.14</b>	A hard link to <b>automake</b>
<b>compile</b>	A wrapper for compilers
<b>config.guess</b>	A script that attempts to guess the canonical triplet for the given build, host, or target architecture

<b>config.sub</b>	A configuration validation subroutine script
<b>depcomp</b>	A script for compiling a program so that dependency information is generated in addition to the desired output
<b>install-sh</b>	A script that installs a program, script, or data file
<b>mdate-sh</b>	A script that prints the modification time of a file or directory
<b>missing</b>	A script acting as a common stub for missing GNU programs during an installation
<b>mkinstalldirs</b>	A script that creates a directory tree
<b>py-compile</b>	Compiles a Python program
<b>ylwrap</b>	A wrapper for <b>lex</b> and <b>yacc</b>

## 6.46. Diffutils-3.3

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 25 MB

### 6.46.1. Installation of Diffutils

First fix a file so locale files are installed:

```
sed -i 's:= @mkdir_p@:= /bin/mkdir -p:' po/Makefile.in.in
```

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.46.2. Contents of Diffutils

**Installed programs:** cmp, diff, diff3, and sdiff

#### Short Descriptions

**cmp** Compares two files and reports whether or in which bytes they differ

**diff** Compares two files or directories and reports which lines in the files differ

**diff3** Compares three files line by line

**sdiff** Merges two files and interactively outputs the results

## 6.47. Gawk-4.1.0

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 30 MB

### 6.47.1. Installation of Gawk

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/gawk-4.1.0
cp -v doc/{awkforai.txt,*.eps,pdf,jpg} /usr/share/doc/gawk-4.1.0
```

### 6.47.2. Contents of Gawk

**Installed programs:** awk (link to gawk), gawk, gawk-4.1.0, and igawk

**Installed libraries:** filefuncs.so, fnmatch.so, fork.so, inplace.so, ordchr.so, readdir.so, readfile.so, revoutput.so, revtwoway.so, rvarray.so, testtext.so, and time.so

**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/{,g}awk, /usr/share/awk, /usr/share/doc/gawk-4.1.0

### Short Descriptions

<b>awk</b>	A link to <b>gawk</b>
<b>gawk</b>	A program for manipulating text files; it is the GNU implementation of <b>awk</b>
<b>gawk-4.1.0</b>	A hard link to <b>gawk</b>
<b>igawk</b>	Gives <b>gawk</b> the ability to include files



## 6.48. Findutils-4.4.2

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 29 MB

### 6.48.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --localstatedir=/var/lib/locate
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--localstatedir*

This option changes the location of the **locate** database to be in `/var/lib/locate`, which is FHS-compliant.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.48.2. Contents of Findutils

**Installed programs:** bigram, code, find, frcode, locate, oldfind, updatedb, and xargs

**Installed directory:** /usr/lib/findutils

#### Short Descriptions

<b>bigram</b>	Was formerly used to produce <b>locate</b> databases
<b>code</b>	Was formerly used to produce <b>locate</b> databases; it is the ancestor of <b>frcode</b> .
<b>find</b>	Searches given directory trees for files matching the specified criteria
<b>frcode</b>	Is called by <b>updatedb</b> to compress the list of file names; it uses front-compression, reducing the database size by a factor of four to five.
<b>locate</b>	Searches through a database of file names and reports the names that contain a given string or match a given pattern
<b>oldfind</b>	Older version of find, using a different algorithm
<b>updatedb</b>	Updates the <b>locate</b> database; it scans the entire file system (including other file systems that are currently mounted, unless told not to) and puts every file name it finds into the database
<b>xargs</b>	Can be used to apply a given command to a list of files

## 6.49. Gettext-0.18.3.2

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

**Approximate build time:** 2.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 199 MB

### 6.49.1. Installation of Gettext

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/gettext-0.18.3.2
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (this takes a long time, around 3 SBUs), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.49.2. Contents of Gettext

**Installed programs:** autopooint, config.charset, config.rpath, envsubst, gettext, gettext.sh, gettextize, hostname, msgattrib, msgcat, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgconv, msgen, msgexec, msgfilter, msgfmt, msggrep, msginit, msgmerge, msgunfmt, msguniq, ngettext, recode-sr-latin, and xgettext

**Installed libraries:** libasprintf.{a,so}, libgettextlib.so, libgettextpo.{a,so}, libgettextsrc.so, and preloadable\_libintl.so

**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/gettext, /usr/share/doc/gettext-0.18.3.2, /usr/share/gettext

### Short Descriptions

<b>autopooint</b>	Copies standard Gettext infrastructure files into a source package
<b>config.charset</b>	Outputs a system-dependent table of character encoding aliases
<b>config.rpath</b>	Outputs a system-dependent set of variables, describing how to set the runtime search path of shared libraries in an executable
<b>envsubst</b>	Substitutes environment variables in shell format strings
<b>gettext</b>	Translates a natural language message into the user's language by looking up the translation in a message catalog
<b>gettext.sh</b>	Primarily serves as a shell function library for gettext
<b>gettextize</b>	Copies all standard Gettext files into the given top-level directory of a package to begin internationalizing it
<b>hostname</b>	Displays a network hostname in various forms

<b>msgattrib</b>	Filters the messages of a translation catalog according to their attributes and manipulates the attributes
<b>msgcat</b>	Concatenates and merges the given .po files
<b>msgcmp</b>	Compares two .po files to check that both contain the same set of msgid strings
<b>msgcomm</b>	Finds the messages that are common to to the given .po files
<b>msgconv</b>	Converts a translation catalog to a different character encoding
<b>msgen</b>	Creates an English translation catalog
<b>msgexec</b>	Applies a command to all translations of a translation catalog
<b>msgfilter</b>	Applies a filter to all translations of a translation catalog
<b>msgfmt</b>	Generates a binary message catalog from a translation catalog
<b>msggrep</b>	Extracts all messages of a translation catalog that match a given pattern or belong to some given source files
<b>msginit</b>	Creates a new .po file, initializing the meta information with values from the user's environment
<b>msgmerge</b>	Combines two raw translations into a single file
<b>msgunfmt</b>	Decompiles a binary message catalog into raw translation text
<b>msguniq</b>	Unifies duplicate translations in a translation catalog
<b>ngettext</b>	Displays native language translations of a textual message whose grammatical form depends on a number
<b>recode-sr-latin</b>	Recodes Serbian text from Cyrillic to Latin script
<b>xgettext</b>	Extracts the translatable message lines from the given source files to make the first translation template
libasprintf	defines the <i>autosprintf</i> class, which makes C formatted output routines usable in C++ programs, for use with the <code>&lt;string&gt;</code> strings and the <code>&lt;iostream&gt;</code> streams
libgettextlib	a private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use
libgettextpo	Used to write specialized programs that process .po files; this library is used when the standard applications shipped with Gettext (such as <b>msgcomm</b> , <b>msgcmp</b> , <b>msgattrib</b> , and <b>msgen</b> ) will not suffice
libgettextsrc	A private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use
preloadable_libintl	A library, intended to be used by LD_PRELOAD that assists libintl in logging untranslated messages.

## 6.50. Intltool-0.50.2

The Intltool is an internationalization tool used for extracting translatable strings from source files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.4 MB

### 6.50.1. Installation of Intltool

Prepare Intltool for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
install -v -Dm644 doc/I18N-HOWTO \
    /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.50.2/I18N-HOWTO
```

### 6.50.2. Contents of Intltool

**Installed program:** intltool-extract, intltool-merge, intltool-prepare, intltool-update, and intltoolize

**Installed directories:** /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.50.2, /usr/share/intltool

#### Short Descriptions

<b>intltoolize</b>	Prepares a package to use intltool.
<b>intltool-extract</b>	Generates header files that can be read by <b>gettext</b> .
<b>intltool-merge</b>	Merges translated strings into various file types.
<b>intltool-prepare</b>	Updates pot files and merges them with translation files.
<b>intltool-update</b>	Updates the po template files and merges them with the translations.

## 6.51. Gperf-3.0.4

Gperf generates a perfect hash function from a key set.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.5 MB

### 6.51.1. Installation of Gperf

Prepare Gperf for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \  
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/gperf-3.0.4
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.51.2. Contents of Gperf

**Installed programs:** gperf

#### Short Descriptions

**gperf** Generates a perfect hash from a key set

## 6.52. Groff-1.22.2

The Groff package contains programs for processing and formatting text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 83 MB

### 6.52.1. Installation of Groff

Groff expects the environment variable `PAGE` to contain the default paper size. For users in the United States, `PAGE=letter` is appropriate. Elsewhere, `PAGE=A4` may be more suitable. While the default paper size is configured during compilation, it can be overridden later by echoing either “A4” or “letter” to the `/etc/papersize` file.

Prepare Groff for compilation:

```
PAGE=<paper_size> ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Some documentation programs, such as **xman**, will not work properly without the following symlinks:

```
ln -sv eqn /usr/bin/geqn
ln -sv tbl /usr/bin/gtbl
```

### 6.52.2. Contents of Groff

**Installed programs:** addftinfo, afmtodit, chem, eqn, eqn2graph, gdiffmk, geqn (link to eqn), grap2graph, grn, grodvi, groff, groffer, grog, grolbp, grolj4, grops, grotty, gtbl (link to tbl), hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, mmroff, neqn, nroff, pdffroff, pfbtops, pic, pic2graph, post-grohtml, preconv, pre-grohtml, refer, roff2dvi, roff2html, roff2pdf, roff2ps, roff2text, roff2x, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit, and troff

**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/groff, /usr/share/doc/groff-1.22.2, /usr/share/groff

### Short Descriptions

<b>addftinfo</b>	Reads a troff font file and adds some additional font-metric information that is used by the <b>groff</b> system
<b>afmtodit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff</b> and <b>grops</b>
<b>chem</b>	Groff preprocessor for producing chemical structure diagrams
<b>eqn</b>	Compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by <b>troff</b>
<b>eqn2graph</b>	Converts a troff EQN (equation) into a cropped image
<b>gdiffmk</b>	Marks differences between groff/nroff/troff files

<b>geqn</b>	A link to <b>eqn</b>
<b>grap2graph</b>	Converts a grap diagram into a cropped bitmap image
<b>grn</b>	A <b>groff</b> preprocessor for gremlin files
<b>grodvi</b>	A driver for <b>groff</b> that produces TeX dvi format
<b>groff</b>	A front-end to the groff document formatting system; normally, it runs the <b>troff</b> program and a post-processor appropriate for the selected device
<b>groffer</b>	Displays groff files and man pages on X and tty terminals
<b>grog</b>	Reads files and guesses which of the <b>groff</b> options <code>-e</code> , <code>-man</code> , <code>-me</code> , <code>-mm</code> , <code>-ms</code> , <code>-p</code> , <code>-s</code> , and <code>-t</code> are required for printing files, and reports the <b>groff</b> command including those options
<b>grolbp</b>	Is a <b>groff</b> driver for Canon CAPSL printers (LBP-4 and LBP-8 series laser printers)
<b>grolj4</b>	Is a driver for <b>groff</b> that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP LaserJet 4 printer
<b>grops</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to PostScript
<b>grotty</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> into a form suitable for typewriter-like devices
<b>gtbl</b>	A link to <b>tbl</b>
<b>hpftodit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff -Tlj4</b> from an HP-tagged font metric file
<b>indxbib</b>	Creates an inverted index for the bibliographic databases with a specified file for use with <b>refer</b> , <b>lookbib</b> , and <b>lkbib</b>
<b>lkbib</b>	Searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and reports any references found
<b>lookbib</b>	Prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads a line containing a set of keywords from the standard input, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input
<b>mmroff</b>	A simple preprocessor for <b>groff</b>
<b>neqn</b>	Formats equations for American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) output
<b>nroff</b>	A script that emulates the <b>nroff</b> command using <b>groff</b>
<b>pdfroff</b>	Creates pdf documents using groff
<b>pfbtops</b>	Translates a PostScript font in <code>.pfb</code> format to ASCII
<b>pic</b>	Compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands understood by TeX or <b>troff</b>
<b>pic2graph</b>	Converts a PIC diagram into a cropped image
<b>post-grohtml</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to HTML
<b>preconv</b>	Converts encoding of input files to something GNU <b>troff</b> understands
<b>pre-grohtml</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to HTML
<b>refer</b>	Copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between <code>./</code> and <code>.]</code> are interpreted as citations, and lines between <code>.R1</code> and <code>.R2</code> are interpreted as commands for how citations are to be processed
<b>roff2dvi</b>	Transforms roff files into DVI format

<b>roff2html</b>	Transforms roff files into HTML format
<b>roff2pdf</b>	Transforms roff files into PDFs
<b>roff2ps</b>	Transforms roff files into ps files
<b>roff2text</b>	Transforms roff files into text files
<b>roff2x</b>	Transforms roff files into other formats
<b>soelim</b>	Reads files and replaces lines of the form <i>.so file</i> by the contents of the mentioned <i>file</i>
<b>tbl</b>	Compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by <b>troff</b>
<b>tfmtofit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff -Tdvi</b>
<b>troff</b>	Is highly compatible with Unix <b>troff</b> ; it should usually be invoked using the <b>groff</b> command, which will also run preprocessors and post-processors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options



## 6.53. Xz-5.0.5

The Xz package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides capabilities for the lzma and the newer xz compression formats. Compressing text files with **xz** yields a better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip** or **bzip2** commands.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 18 MB

### 6.53.1. Installation of Xz

Prepare Xz for compilation with:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/xz-5.0.5
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package and make sure that all essential files are in the correct directory:

```
make install
mv -v /usr/bin/{lzcatt,lzma,unlzma,unxz,xz,xzcat} /bin
mv -v /usr/lib/liblzma.so.* /lib
ln -svf ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/liblzma.so) /usr/lib/liblzma.so
```

### 6.53.2. Contents of Xz

**Installed programs:** lzcat (link to xz), lzcmp (link to xzdiff), lzdiff (link to xzdiff), lzgrep (link to xzgrep), lzfgrep (link to xzgrep), lzgrep (link to xzgrep), lzless (link to xzless), lzma (link to xz), lzmadec, lzmainfo, lzmore (link to xzmore), unlzma (link to xz), unxz, (link to xz), xz, xzcat (link to xz), xzcmp (link to xzdiff), xzdec, xzdiff, xzgrep (link to xzgrep), xzfgrep (link to xzgrep), xzgrep, xzless, xzmore

**Installed libraries:** liblzma.{a,so}

**Installed directories:** /usr/include/lzma and /usr/share/doc/xz-5.0.5

### Short Descriptions

<b>lzcat</b>	Decompresses to standard output
<b>lzcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on LZMA compressed files
<b>lzdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on LZMA compressed files
<b>lzgrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on LZMA compressed files files
<b>lzfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on LZMA compressed files
<b>lzgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on LZMA compressed files
<b>lzless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on LZMA compressed files

<b>lzma</b>	Compresses or decompresses files using the LZMA format
<b>lzmadec</b>	A small and fast decoder for LZMA compressed files
<b>lzmainfo</b>	Shows information stored in the LZMA compressed file header
<b>lzmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on LZMA compressed files
<b>unlzma</b>	Decompresses files using the LZMA format
<b>unxz</b>	Decompresses files using the XZ format
<b>xz</b>	Compresses or decompresses files using the XZ format
<b>xzcat</b>	Decompresses to standard output
<b>xzcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on XZ compressed files
<b>xzdec</b>	A small and fast decoder for XZ compressed files
<b>xzdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on XZ compressed files
<b>xzegrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on XZ compressed files files
<b>xzfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on XZ compressed files
<b>xzgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on XZ compressed files
<b>xzless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on XZ compressed files
<b>xzmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on XZ compressed files
<code>liblzma*</code>	The library implementing lossless, block-sorting data compression, using the Lempel-Ziv-Markov chain algorithm

## 6.54. GRUB-2.00

The GRUB package contains the GRand Unified Bootloader.

**Approximate build time:** 0.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 112 MB

### 6.54.1. Installation of GRUB

Fix an incompatibility between this package and Glibc-2.19:

```
sed -i -e '/gets is a/d' grub-core/gnulib/stdio.in.h
```

Prepare GRUB for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          \
            --sbindir=/sbin        \
            --sysconfdir=/etc      \
            --disable-grub-emu-usb \
            --disable-efiemu       \
            --disable-werror
```

The `--disable-werror` option allows the build to complete with warnings introduced by more recent flex versions. The other `--disable` switches minimize what is built by disabling features and testing programs not needed for LFS.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Using GRUB to make your LFS system bootable will be discussed in Section 8.4, “Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process”.

### 6.54.2. Contents of GRUB

**Installed programs:** grub-bios-setup, grub-editenv, grub-fstest, grub-install, grub-kbdcomp, grub-menulst2cfg, grub-mkconfig, grub-mkimage, grub-mklayout, grub-mknetdir, grub-mkpasswd-pbkdf2, grub-mkrelpath, grub-mkrescue, grub-mkstandalone, grub-ofpathname, grub-probe, grub-reboot, grub-script-check, grub-set-default, grub-sparc64-setup

**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/grub, /etc/grub.d, /usr/share/grub, /boot/grub

### Short Descriptions

<b>grub-bios-setup</b>	Is a helper program for grub-install
<b>grub-editenv</b>	A tool to edit the environment block
<b>grub-fstest</b>	Tool to debug the filesystem driver

<b>grub-install</b>	Install GRUB on your drive
<b>grub-kbdcomp</b>	Script that converts an xkb layout into one recognized by GRUB
<b>grub-menulst2cfg</b>	Converts a GRUB Legacy menu .lst into a grub.cfg for use with GRUB 2
<b>grub-mkconfig</b>	Generate a grub config file
<b>grub-mkimage</b>	Make a bootable image of GRUB
<b>grub-mklayout</b>	Generates a GRUB keyboard layout file
<b>grub-mknetdir</b>	Prepares a GRUB netboot directory
<b>grub-mkpasswd-pbkdf2</b>	Generates an encrypted PBKDF2 password for use in the boot menu
<b>grub-mkrelpath</b>	Makes a system pathname relative to its root
<b>grub-mkrescue</b>	Make a bootable image of GRUB suitable for a floppy disk or CDROM/DVD
<b>grub-mkstandalone</b>	Generates a standalone image
<b>grub-ofpathname</b>	Is a helper program that prints the path of a GRUB device
<b>grub-probe</b>	Probe device information for a given path or device
<b>grub-reboot</b>	Sets the default boot entry for GRUB for the next boot only
<b>grub-script-check</b>	Checks GRUB configuration script for syntax errors
<b>grub-set-default</b>	Sets the default boot entry for GRUB
<b>grub-sparc64-setup</b>	Is a helper program for grub-setup

## 6.55. Less-458

The Less package contains a text file viewer.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.6 MB

### 6.55.1. Installation of Less

Prepare Less for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--sysconfdir=/etc*

This option tells the programs created by the package to look in `/etc` for the configuration files.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.55.2. Contents of Less

**Installed programs:** less, lessecho, and lesskey

#### Short Descriptions

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| <b>less</b>     | A file viewer or pager; it displays the contents of the given file, letting the user scroll, find strings, and jump to marks |
| <b>lessecho</b> | Needed to expand meta-characters, such as <code>*</code> and <code>?</code> , in filenames on Unix systems                   |
| <b>lesskey</b>  | Used to specify the key bindings for <b>less</b>   |

## 6.56. Gzip-1.6

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 19.7 MB

### 6.56.1. Installation of Gzip

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move some programs that do not need to be on the root filesystem:

```
mv -v /bin/{gzexe,uncompress,zcmp,zdiff,zegrep} /usr/bin
mv -v /bin/{zfgrep,zforce,zgrep,zless,zmore,znew} /usr/bin
```

### 6.56.2. Contents of Gzip

**Installed programs:** gunzip, gzexe, gzip, uncompress, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zegrep, zfgrep, zforce, zgrep, zless, zmore, and znew

#### Short Descriptions

<b>gunzip</b>	Decompresses gzipped files
<b>gzexe</b>	Creates self-decompressing executable files
<b>gzip</b>	Compresses the given files using Lempel-Ziv (LZ77) coding
<b>uncompress</b>	Decompresses compressed files
<b>zcat</b>	Decompresses the given gzipped files to standard output
<b>zcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on gzipped files
<b>zdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on gzipped files
<b>zegrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on gzipped files
<b>zfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on gzipped files
<b>zforce</b>	Forces a <b>.gz</b> extension on all given files that are gzipped files, so that <b>gzip</b> will not compress them again; this can be useful when file names were truncated during a file transfer
<b>zgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on gzipped files

<b>zless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on gzipped files
<b>zmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on gzipped files
<b>znew</b>	Re-compresses files from <b>compress</b> format to <b>gzip</b> format— .Z to .gz

## 6.57. IPRoute2-3.12.0

The IPRoute2 package contains programs for basic and advanced IPV4-based networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 7.3 MB

### 6.57.1. Installation of IPRoute2

The **arpd** binary included in this package is dependent on Berkeley DB. Because **arpd** is not a very common requirement on a base Linux system, remove the dependency on Berkeley DB by applying the commands below. If the **arpd** binary is needed, instructions for compiling Berkeley DB can be found in the BLFS Book at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/server/databases.html#db>.

```
sed -i '/^TARGETS/s@arpd@g' misc/Makefile
sed -i /ARPD/d Makefile
sed -i 's/arpd.8//' man/man8/Makefile
```

Compile the package:

```
make DESTDIR=
```

**The meaning of the make option:**

*DESTDIR=*

This ensures that the IPRoute2 binaries will install into the correct directory. By default, *DESTDIR* is set to */usr*.

This package comes with a test suite, but due to assumptions it makes, it is not possible to reliably run these tests from within the chroot environment. If you wish to run these tests after booting into your new LFS system, ensure you select `/proc/config.gz CONFIG_IKCONFIG_PROC` ("General setup" -> "Enable access to .config through /proc/config.gz") support into your kernel then run 'make alltests' from the `testsuite/` subdirectory.

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=          \
      MANDIR=/usr/share/man \
      DOCDIR=/usr/share/doc/iproute2-3.12.0 install
```

### 6.57.2. Contents of IPRoute2

**Installed programs:** bridge, ctstat (link to lstat), genl, ifcfg, ifstat, ip, lstat, nstat, route, routel, rtacct, rtmon, rtpr, rtstat (link to lstat), ss, and tc

**Installed directories:** /etc/iproute2, /lib/tc, /usr/share/doc/iproute2-3.12.0, /usr/lib/tc

### Short Descriptions

**bridge** Configures network bridges

**ctstat** Connection status utility

**genl**

**ifcfg** A shell script wrapper for the **ip** command. Note that it requires the **arping** and **rdisk** programs from the `iputils` package found at <http://www.skbuff.net/iputils/>.



<b>ifstat</b>	Shows the interface statistics, including the amount of transmitted and received packets by interface
<b>ip</b>	The main executable. It has several different functions: <b>ip link &lt;device&gt;</b> allows users to look at the state of devices and to make changes <b>ip addr</b> allows users to look at addresses and their properties, add new addresses, and delete old ones <b>ip neighbor</b> allows users to look at neighbor bindings and their properties, add new neighbor entries, and delete old ones <b>ip rule</b> allows users to look at the routing policies and change them <b>ip route</b> allows users to look at the routing table and change routing table rules <b>ip tunnel</b> allows users to look at the IP tunnels and their properties, and change them <b>ip maddr</b> allows users to look at the multicast addresses and their properties, and change them <b>ip mroute</b> allows users to set, change, or delete the multicast routing <b>ip monitor</b> allows users to continuously monitor the state of devices, addresses and routes
<b>lnstat</b>	Provides Linux network statistics. It is a generalized and more feature-complete replacement for the old <b>rtstat</b> program
<b>nstat</b>	Shows network statistics
<b>routef</b>	A component of <b>ip route</b> . This is for flushing the routing tables
<b>routel</b>	A component of <b>ip route</b> . This is for listing the routing tables
<b>rtacct</b>	Displays the contents of <code>/proc/net/rt_acct</code>
<b>rtmon</b>	Route monitoring utility
<b>rtpr</b>	Converts the output of <b>ip -o</b> back into a readable form
<b>rtstat</b>	Route status utility
<b>ss</b>	Similar to the <b>netstat</b> command; shows active connections
<b>tc</b>	Traffic Controlling Executable; this is for Quality Of Service (QOS) and Class Of Service (COS) implementations <b>tc qdisc</b> allows users to setup the queuing discipline <b>tc class</b> allows users to setup classes based on the queuing discipline scheduling <b>tc estimator</b> allows users to estimate the network flow into a network <b>tc filter</b> allows users to setup the QOS/COS packet filtering <b>tc policy</b> allows users to setup the QOS/COS policies

## 6.58. Kbd-2.0.1

The Kbd package contains key-table files, console fonts, and keyboard utilities.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 20 MB

### 6.58.1. Installation of Kbd

The behaviour of the Backspace and Delete keys is not consistent across the keymaps in the Kbd package. The following patch fixes this issue for i386 keymaps:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../kbd-2.0.1-backspace-1.patch
```

After patching, the Backspace key generates the character with code 127, and the Delete key generates a well-known escape sequence.

Remove the redundant **resizecons** program (it requires the defunct svgalib to provide the video mode files - for normal use **setfont** sizes the console appropriately) together with its manpage.

```
sed -i 's/\(RESIZECONS_PROGS=\)yes/\lno/g' configure
sed -i 's/resizecons.8 //' docs/man/man8/Makefile.in
```

Prepare Kbd for compilation:

```
PKG_CONFIG_PATH=/tools/lib/pkgconfig ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-vlock
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-vlock*

This option prevents the vlock utility from being built, as it requires the PAM library, which isn't available in the chroot environment.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```



#### Note

For some languages (e.g., Belarusian) the Kbd package doesn't provide a useful keymap where the stock “by” keymap assumes the ISO-8859-5 encoding, and the CP1251 keymap is normally used. Users of such languages have to download working keymaps separately.

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/kbd-2.0.1
cp -R -v docs/doc/* /usr/share/doc/kbd-2.0.1
```

## 6.58.2. Contents of Kbd

<b>Installed programs:</b>	chvt, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, getkeycodes, kbinfo, kbd_mode, kbdrate, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, openvt, psfaddtable (link to psfxtable), psfgettable (link to psfxtable), psfstrietable (link to psfxtable), psfxtable, setfont, setkeycodes, settled, setmetamode, showconsolefont, showkey, unicode_start, and unicode_stop
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/share/consolefonts, /usr/share/consoletrans, /usr/share/keymaps, /usr/share/unimaps

### Short Descriptions

<b>chvt</b>	Changes the foreground virtual terminal
<b>deallocvt</b>	Deallocates unused virtual terminals
<b>dumpkeys</b>	Dumps the keyboard translation tables
<b>fgconsole</b>	Prints the number of the active virtual terminal
<b>getkeycodes</b>	Prints the kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table
<b>kbinfo</b>	Obtains information about the status of a console
<b>kbd_mode</b>	Reports or sets the keyboard mode
<b>kbdrate</b>	Sets the keyboard repeat and delay rates
<b>loadkeys</b>	Loads the keyboard translation tables
<b>loadunimap</b>	Loads the kernel unicode-to-font mapping table
<b>mapscrn</b>	An obsolete program that used to load a user-defined output character mapping table into the console driver; this is now done by <b>setfont</b>
<b>openvt</b>	Starts a program on a new virtual terminal (VT)
<b>psfaddtable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfgettable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfstrietable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfxtable</b>	Handle Unicode character tables for console fonts
<b>setfont</b>	Changes the Enhanced Graphic Adapter (EGA) and Video Graphics Array (VGA) fonts on the console
<b>setkeycodes</b>	Loads kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table entries; this is useful if there are unusual keys on the keyboard
<b>settled</b>	Sets the keyboard flags and Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs)
<b>setmetamode</b>	Defines the keyboard meta-key handling
<b>showconsolefont</b>	Shows the current EGA/VGA console screen font
<b>showkey</b>	Reports the scancodes, keycodes, and ASCII codes of the keys pressed on the keyboard
<b>unicode_start</b>	Puts the keyboard and console in UNICODE mode. Don't use this program unless your keymap file is in the ISO-8859-1 encoding. For other encodings, this utility produces incorrect results.
<b>unicode_stop</b>	Reverts keyboard and console from UNICODE mode

## 6.59. Kmod-16

The Kmod package contains libraries and utilities for loading kernel modules

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 34 MB

### 6.59.1. Installation of Kmod

Prepare Kmod for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          \
            --bindir=/bin          \
            --sysconfdir=/etc      \
            --disable-manpages     \
            --with-rootlibdir=/lib \
            --with-xz              \
            --with-zlib
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--with-xz, --with-zlib*

These options enable Kmod to handle compressed kernel modules.

*--disable-manpages*

This option prevents the man pages from being built, as they rely on libxslt, which isn't available in the chroot environment.

*--with-rootlibdir=/lib*

This option ensures different library related files are placed in the correct directories.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package, and create symlinks for compatibility with Module-Init-Tools, the package that previously handled Linux kernel modules. Also make sure that all libraries are in the correct directory:

```
make install
```

```
for target in depmod insmod modinfo modprobe rmmod; do
    ln -sv ../bin/kmod /sbin/$target
done

ln -sv kmod /bin/lsmode
```

### 6.59.2. Contents of Kmod

**Installed programs:** depmod (link to kmod), insmod (link to kmod), kmod, lsmod (link to kmod), modinfo (link to kmod), modprobe (link to kmod), and rmmod (link to kmod)

**Installed libraries:** libkmod.so

## Short Descriptions

<b>depmod</b>	Creates a dependency file based on the symbols it finds in the existing set of modules; this dependency file is used by <b>modprobe</b> to automatically load the required modules
<b>insmod</b>	Installs a loadable module in the running kernel
<b>kmod</b>	Loads and unloads kernel modules
<b>lsmod</b>	Lists currently loaded modules
<b>modinfo</b>	Examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean
<b>modprobe</b>	Uses a dependency file, created by <b>depmod</b> , to automatically load relevant modules
<b>rmmmod</b>	Unloads modules from the running kernel
<code>libkmod</code>	This library is used by other programs to load and unload kernel modules

## 6.60. Libpipeline-1.2.6

The Libpipeline package contains a library for manipulating pipelines of subprocesses in a flexible and convenient way.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 7.4 MB

### 6.60.1. Installation of Libpipeline

Prepare Libpipeline for compilation:

```
PKG_CONFIG_PATH=/tools/lib/pkgconfig ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*PKG\_CONFIG\_PATH*

Use pkg-config to obtain the location of the test library metadata built in Section 5.14, “Check-0.9.12”.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.60.2. Contents of Libpipeline

**Installed libraries:** libpipeline.so

#### Short Descriptions

`libpipeline` This library is used to safely construct pipelines between subprocesses

## 6.61. Make-4.0

The Make package contains a program for compiling packages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 11.3 MB

### 6.61.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.61.2. Contents of Make

**Installed program:** make

#### Short Descriptions

**make** Automatically determines which pieces of a package need to be (re)compiled and then issues the relevant commands

## 6.62. Patch-2.7.1

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the **diff** program.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.4 MB

### 6.62.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.62.2. Contents of Patch

**Installed program:** patch

#### Short Descriptions

**patch** Modifies files according to a patch file. A patch file is normally a difference listing created with the **diff** program. By applying these differences to the original files, **patch** creates the patched versions.



## 6.63. Libdbus-1.8.0

Libdbus package provides a library to communicate with D-Bus messagebus daemon. It is only installed to satisfy circular dependency between Systemd and D-Bus.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 35 MB

### 6.63.1. Installation of Libdbus



#### Note

Libdbus is part of the D-Bus sources. You should first unpack the D-Bus tarball and change to the `dbus-1.8.0` directory.

Prepare Libdbus for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/dbus-1.0 \
            --disable-static
```

Compile the package:

```
make -C dbus libdbus-1.la
```

This package does come with a testsuite, but it is not possible to run it because only part of the package was built.

Install the package:

```
make -C dbus lib_LTLIBRARIES=libdbus-1.la \
      install-libLTLIBRARIES \
      install-dbusincludeHEADERS \
      install-nodist_dbusarchincludeHEADERS
make install-pkgconfigDATA
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so) /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so
```

### 6.63.2. Contents of Libdbus

<b>Installed programs:</b>	none
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libdbus-1.so
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/include/dbus-1.0, /usr/lib/dbus-1.0

#### Short Descriptions

`libdbus-1.so` Contains API functions used to communicate with the D-Bus message bus.

## 6.64. Systemd-208

The Systemd package contains programs for controlling the startup, running, and shutdown of the system.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 29 MB

### 6.64.1. Installation of Systemd

First, create a file to allow Systemd to build when using Util-Linux built in Chapter 5:

```
cat > config.cache << "EOF"
KILL=/bin/kill
HAVE_BLKID=1
BLKID_LIBS="-lblkid"
BLKID_CFLAGS="-I/tools/include/blkid"
EOF
```

Additionally, fix a build error when using Util-Linux built in Chapter 5:

```
sed -i "s:blkid/::" src/udev/udev-builtin-blkid.c
```

Prepare Systemd for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/systemd-208 \
            --config-cache \
            --with-rootprefix= \
            --with-rootlibdir=/lib \
            --enable-split-usr \
            --disable-gudev \
            --without-python
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--config-cache*

This switch tells the build system to use the `config.cache` file which was created earlier.

*--with-root\**

These switches ensure that core programs and shared libraries are installed in the subdirectories of the root partition.

*--enable-split-usr*

This switch ensures that Systemd will work on systems where `/bin`, `/lib` and `/sbin` directories are not symlinks to their `/usr` counterparts.

*--disable-gudev --without-python*

These switches disable optional features because LFS does not provide their dependencies.

Compile the package:

```
make LIBRARY_PATH=/tools/lib
```

The package comes with a testsuite, but it doesn't work in chroot. It needs to be run from a system booted using Systemd.

Install the package:

```
make LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/tools/lib install
```

Install manual pages which are shipped in the tarball, but were not installed by install process:

```
for cat in 1 3 5 7 8
do
  install -v -m644 man/*.${cat} /usr/share/man/man${cat}
done
```

Move NSS myhostname library to /lib:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libnss_myhostname.so.2 /lib
```

Create the Sysvinit compatibility symlinks, so Systemd is used as the default init system:

```
for tool in runlevel reboot shutdown poweroff halt telinit; do
  ln -sfv ../bin/systemctl /sbin/${tool}
done
ln -sfv ../lib/systemd/systemd /sbin/init
```

Remove a reference to a non-existent group:

```
sed -i "s@0775 root lock@0755 root root@g" /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/legacy.conf
```

Create the /etc/machine-id file needed by Journald:

```
systemd-machine-id-setup
```

## 6.64.2. Contents of Systemd

<b>Installed programs:</b>	bootctl, halt, hostnamectl, init, journalctl, kernel-install, localectl, loginctl, machinectl, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, systemctl, systemd-analyze, systemd-ask-password, systemd-cat, systemd-cgls, systemd-cgtop, systemd-coredumpctl, systemd-delta, systemd-detect-virt, systemd-inhibit, systemd-machine-id-setup, systemd-notify, systemd-nspawn, systemd-run, systemd-stdio-bridge, systemd-tmpfiles, systemd-tty-ask-password-agent, telinit, timedatectl, and udevadm
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libnss_myhostname.so.2, libsystemd-daemon.so, libsystemd-id128.so, libsystemd-journal.so, libsystemd-login.so, libudev.so
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/etc/binfmt.d, /etc/init.d, /etc/kernel, /etc/modules-load.d, /etc/sysctl.d, /etc/systemd, /etc/tmpfiles.d, /etc/udev, /etc/xdg/systemd, /lib/systemd, /lib/udev, /usr/include/systemd, /usr/lib/binfmt.d, /usr/lib/kernel, /usr/lib/modules-load.d, /usr/lib/rpm, /usr/lib/sysctl.d, /usr/lib/systemd, /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d, /usr/share/doc/systemd-208, /usr/share/systemd, /var/lib/systemd, /var/log/journal

## Short Descriptions

<b>halt</b>	Normally invokes <b>shutdown</b> with the <code>-h</code> option, except when already in run-level 0, then it tells the kernel to halt the system; it notes in the file <code>/var/log/wtmp</code> that the system is being brought down.
-------------	---

<b>hostnamectl</b>	used to query and change the system hostname and related settings.
<b>init</b>	The first process to be started when the kernel has initialized the hardware which takes over the boot process and starts all the processes it is instructed to.
<b>journalctl</b>	used to query the contents of the Systemd Journal.
<b>kernel-install</b>	used to add and remove kernel and initramfs images to and from /boot.
<b>localectl</b>	used to query and change the system locale and keyboard layout settings.
<b>loginctl</b>	used to introspect and control the state of the Systemd Login Manager.
<b>machinectl</b>	used to introspect and control the state of the Systemd Virtual Machine and Container Registration Manager
<b>poweroff</b>	Tells the kernel to halt the system and switch off the computer (see <b>halt</b> ).
<b>reboot</b>	Tells the kernel to reboot the system (see <b>halt</b> ).
<b>runlevel</b>	Reports the previous and the current run-level, as noted in the last run-level record in <code>/var/run/utmp</code> .
<b>shutdown</b>	Brings the system down in a secure way, signaling all processes and notifying all logged-in users.
<b>systemctl</b>	used to introspect and control the state of the Systemd system and service manager.
<b>systemd-analyze</b>	used to determine system boot-up performance of the current boot.
<b>systemd-ask-password</b>	used to query a system password or passphrase from the user, using a question message specified on the command line.
<b>systemd-cat</b>	used to connect STDOUT and STDERR of a process with the Journal.
<b>systemd-cgls</b>	recursively shows the contents of the selected Linux control group hierarchy in a tree.
<b>systemd-cgtop</b>	shows the top control groups of the local Linux control group hierarchy, ordered by their CPU, memory and disk I/O load.
<b>systemd-coredumpctl</b>	used to retrieve coredumps from the Systemd Journal
<b>systemd-delta</b>	used to identify and compare configuration files in <code>/etc</code> that override default counterparts in <code>/usr</code> .
<b>systemd-detect-virt</b>	detects execution in a virtualized environment.
<b>systemd-inhibit</b>	used to execute a program with a shutdown, sleep or idle inhibitor lock taken.
<b>systemd-machine-id-setup</b>	used by system installer tools to initialize the machine ID stored in <code>/etc/machine-id</code> at install time with a randomly generated ID.
<b>systemd-notify</b>	used by daemon scripts to notify the init system about status changes.
<b>systemd-nspawn</b>	used to run a command or OS in a light-weight namespace container.
<b>systemd-run</b>	used to create and start a transient <code>.service</code> or a <code>.scope</code> unit and run the specified command in it.

<b>systemd-tmpfiles</b>	creates, deletes and cleans up volatile and temporary files and directories, based on the configuration file format and location specified in <code>tmpfiles.d</code> directories.
<b>systemd-tty-ask-password-agent</b>	used to list or process pending Systemd password requests
<b>telinit</b>	Tells <b>init</b> which run-level to change to.
<b>timedatectl</b>	used to query and change the system clock and its settings.
<b>udevadm</b>	Generic Udev administration tool: controls the udevd daemon, provides info from the Udev database, monitors uevents, waits for uevents to finish, tests Udev configuration, and triggers uevents for a given device.
<code>libsystemd-daemon</code>	Systemd Daemon utility library.
<code>libsystemd-id128</code>	Systemd 128 Bit ID utility library.
<code>libsystemd-journal</code>	Systemd Journal utility library.
<code>libsystemd-login</code>	Systemd Login utility library.
<code>libudev</code>	A library to access Udev device information.

## 6.65. D-Bus-1.8.0

D-Bus is a message bus system, a simple way for applications to talk to one another. D-Bus supplies both a system daemon (for events such as "new hardware device added" or "printer queue changed") and a per-user-login-session daemon (for general IPC needs among user applications). Also, the message bus is built on top of a general one-to-one message passing framework, which can be used by any two applications to communicate directly (without going through the message bus daemon).

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 35 MB

### 6.65.1. Installation of D-Bus

Prepare D-Bus for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --localstatedir=/var \
            --libexecdir=/usr/lib/dbus-1.0 \
            --disable-static \
            --enable-systemd \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/dbus-1.8.0 \
            --with-console-auth-dir=/run/console/ \
            --with-systemdsystemunitdir=/lib/systemd/system
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--enable-systemd*

This enables support for authentication check using Systemd Logind.

*--with-console-auth-dir=/run/console*

This specifies the location of the ConsoleKit auth directory.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does come with a testsuite, but it requires several packages that are not included in LFS.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so) /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so
```

Create a symlink, so that D-Bus and Systemd can use the same `machine-id` file:

```
ln -sv /etc/machine-id /var/lib/dbus
```

## 6.65.2. Contents of D-Bus

<b>Installed programs:</b>	dbus-cleanup-sockets, dbus-daemon, dbus-launch, dbus-monitor, dbus-send, and dbus-uuidgen
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libdbus-1.so
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/etc/dbus-1, /usr/include/dbus-1.0, /usr/lib/dbus-1.0, /usr/share/dbus-1, /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.8.0, /var/lib/dbus

### Short Descriptions

<b>dbus-cleanup-sockets</b>	Used to clean up leftover sockets in a directory.
<b>dbus-daemon</b>	The D-Bus message bus daemon.
<b>dbus-launch</b>	Starts <b>dbus-daemon</b> from a shell script.
<b>dbus-monitor</b>	Monitors messages passing through a D-Bus message bus.
<b>dbus-send</b>	Sends a message to a D-Bus message bus.
<b>dbus-uuidgen</b>	Generates a universally unique ID.
libdbus-1.so	Contains API functions used to communicate with the D-Bus message bus.

## 6.66. Util-linux-2.24.1

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 89 MB

### 6.66.1. FHS compliance notes

The FHS recommends using the `/var/lib/hwclock` directory instead of the usual `/etc` directory as the location for the `adjtime` file. To make the `hwclock` program FHS-compliant, run the following:

```
sed -i -e 's@etc/adjtime@var/lib/hwclock/adjtime@g' \
    $(grep -rl '/etc/adjtime' .)

mkdir -pv /var/lib/hwclock
```

### 6.66.2. Installation of Util-linux

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

If desired, run the test suite as a non-root user:



#### Warning

Running the test suite as the root user can be harmful to your system. To run it, the `CONFIG_SCSI_DEBUG` option for the kernel must be available in the currently running system, and must be built as a module. Building it into the kernel will prevent booting. For complete coverage, other BLFS packages must be installed. If desired, this test can be run after rebooting into the completed LFS system and running:

```
bash tests/run.sh --srcdir=$PWD --builddir=$PWD
```



#### Note

Two tests, `last/ipv6` and `last/last`, fail in the chroot environment due to the DNS resolver not being active yet. If the tests are rerun after booting, they pass.

```
chown -Rv nobody .
su nobody -s /bin/bash -c "PATH=$PATH make -k check"
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```



### 6.66.3. Contents of Util-linux

<b>Installed programs:</b>	addpart, agetty, blkdiscard, blkid, blockdev, cal, cfdisk, chcpu, chrt, col, colcrt, colrm, column, ctrlaltdel, cytune, delpart, dmesg, eject, fallocate, fdformat, fdisk, findfs, findmnt, flock, fsck, fsck.cramfs, fsck.minix, fsfreeze, fstrim, getopt, hexdump, hwclock, i386, ionice, ipcmk, ipcrm, ipcs, isosize, kill, last, lastb (link to last), ldattach, linux32, linux64, logger, look, losetup, lsblk, lscpu, lslocks, mcookie, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.cramfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, more, mount, mountpoint, namei, partx, pg, pivot_root, prlimit, raw, readprofile, rename, renice, resizepart, rev, rtcwake, script, scriptreplay, setarch, setsid, setterm, sfdisk, sulogin, swapon, swapoff (link to swapon), swapon, switch_root, tailf, taskset, ul, umount, unshare, utmpdump, uuuid, uuidgen, wall, wdctl, whereis, wipefs, and x86_64
<b>Installed libraries:</b>	libblkid.{a,so}, libmount.{a,so}, libuuid.{a,so}
<b>Installed directories:</b>	/usr/include/blkid, /usr/include/libmount, /usr/include/uuid, /usr/share/doc/util-linux/getopt, /var/lib/hwclock

### Short Descriptions

<b>addpart</b>	Informs the Linux kernel of new partitions
<b>agetty</b>	Opens a tty port, prompts for a login name, and then invokes the <b>login</b> program
<b>blkdiscard</b>	Discards sectors on a device
<b>blkid</b>	A command line utility to locate and print block device attributes
<b>blockdev</b>	Allows users to call block device ioctls from the command line
<b>cal</b>	Displays a simple calendar
<b>cfdisk</b>	Manipulates the partition table of the given device
<b>chcpu</b>	Modifies the state of CPUs
<b>chrt</b>	Manipulates real-time attributes of a process
<b>col</b>	Filters out reverse line feeds
<b>colcrt</b>	Filters <b>nroff</b> output for terminals that lack some capabilities, such as overstriking and half-lines
<b>colrm</b>	Filters out the given columns
<b>column</b>	Formats a given file into multiple columns
<b>ctrlaltdel</b>	Sets the function of the Ctrl+Alt+Del key combination to a hard or a soft reset
<b>cytune</b>	Tunes the parameters of the serial line drivers for Cyclades cards
<b>delpart</b>	Asks the Linux kernel to remove a partition
<b>dmesg</b>	Dumps the kernel boot messages
<b>eject</b>	Ejects removable media
<b>fallocate</b>	Preallocates space to a file
<b>fdformat</b>	Low-level formats a floppy disk
<b>fdisk</b>	Manipulates the partition table of the given device
<b>findfs</b>	Finds a file system by label or Universally Unique Identifier (UUID)
<b>findmnt</b>	Is a command line interface to the libmount library for work with mountinfo, fstab and mtab files

<b>flock</b>	Acquires a file lock and then executes a command with the lock held
<b>fsck</b>	Is used to check, and optionally repair, file systems
<b>fsck.cramfs</b>	Performs a consistency check on the Cramfs file system on the given device
<b>fsck.minix</b>	Performs a consistency check on the Minix file system on the given device
<b>fsfreeze</b>	Is a very simple wrapper around FIFREEZE/FITHAW ioctl kernel driver operations
<b>fstrim</b>	Discards unused blocks on a mounted filesystem
<b>getopt</b>	Parses options in the given command line
<b>hexdump</b>	Dumps the given file in hexadecimal or in another given format
<b>hwclock</b>	Reads or sets the system's hardware clock, also called the Real-Time Clock (RTC) or Basic Input-Output System (BIOS) clock
<b>i386</b>	A symbolic link to setarch
<b>ionice</b>	Gets or sets the io scheduling class and priority for a program
<b>ipcmk</b>	Creates various IPC resources
<b>ipcrm</b>	Removes the given Inter-Process Communication (IPC) resource
<b>ipcs</b>	Provides IPC status information
<b>isosize</b>	Reports the size of an iso9660 file system
<b>kill</b>	Sends signals to processes
<b>last</b>	Shows which users last logged in (and out), searching back through the <code>/var/log/wtmp</code> file; it also shows system boots, shutdowns, and run-level changes
<b>lastb</b>	Shows the failed login attempts, as logged in <code>/var/log/btmp</code>
<b>ldattach</b>	Attaches a line discipline to a serial line
<b>linux32</b>	A symbolic link to setarch
<b>linux64</b>	A symbolic link to setarch
<b>logger</b>	Enters the given message into the system log
<b>look</b>	Displays lines that begin with the given string
<b>losetup</b>	Sets up and controls loop devices
<b>lsblk</b>	Lists information about all or selected block devices in a tree-like format.
<b>lscpu</b>	Prints CPU architecture information
<b>lslocks</b>	Lists local system locks
<b>mcookie</b>	Generates magic cookies (128-bit random hexadecimal numbers) for <b>xauth</b>
<b>mesg</b>	Controls whether other users can send messages to the current user's terminal
<b>mkfs</b>	Builds a file system on a device (usually a hard disk partition)
<b>mkfs.bfs</b>	Creates a Santa Cruz Operations (SCO) bfs file system
<b>mkfs.cramfs</b>	Creates a cramfs file system
<b>mkfs.minix</b>	Creates a Minix file system
<b>mkswap</b>	Initializes the given device or file to be used as a swap area

<b>more</b>	A filter for paging through text one screen at a time
<b>mount</b>	Attaches the file system on the given device to a specified directory in the file-system tree
<b>mountpoint</b>	Checks if the directory is a mountpoint
<b>namei</b>	Shows the symbolic links in the given pathnames
<b>nsenter</b>	Runs a program with namespaces of other processes
<b>partx</b>	Tells the kernel about the presence and numbering of on-disk partitions
<b>pg</b>	Displays a text file one screen full at a time
<b>pivot_root</b>	Makes the given file system the new root file system of the current process
<b>prlimit</b>	Get and set a process' resource limits
<b>raw</b>	Bind a Linux raw character device to a block device
<b>readprofile</b>	Reads kernel profiling information
<b>rename</b>	Renames the given files, replacing a given string with another
<b>renice</b>	Alters the priority of running processes
<b>resizepart</b>	Asks the Linux kernel to resize a partition
<b>rev</b>	Reverses the lines of a given file
<b>rtcwake</b>	Used to enter a system sleep state until specified wakeup time
<b>script</b>	Makes a typescript of a terminal session
<b>scriptreplay</b>	Plays back typescripts using timing information
<b>setarch</b>	Changes reported architecture in a new program environment and sets personality flags
<b>setsid</b>	Runs the given program in a new session
<b>setterm</b>	Sets terminal attributes
<b>sfdisk</b>	A disk partition table manipulator
<b>sulogin</b>	Allows <code>root</code> to log in; it is normally invoked by <b>init</b> when the system goes into single user mode
<b>swapon</b>	Allows to change swaparea UUID and label
<b>swapoff</b>	Disables devices and files for paging and swapping
<b>swapon</b>	Enables devices and files for paging and swapping and lists the devices and files currently in use
<b>switch_root</b>	Switches to another filesystem as the root of the mount tree
<b>tailf</b>	Tracks the growth of a log file. Displays the last 10 lines of a log file, then continues displaying any new entries in the log file as they are created
<b>taskset</b>	Retrieves or sets a process' CPU affinity
<b>ul</b>	A filter for translating underscores into escape sequences indicating underlining for the terminal in use
<b>umount</b>	Disconnects a file system from the system's file tree
<b>unshare</b>	Runs a program with some namespaces unshared from parent
<b>utmpdump</b>	Displays the content of the given login file in a more user-friendly format
<b>uudd</b>	A daemon used by the UUID library to generate time-based UUIDs in a secure and guaranteed-unique fashion.

<b>uuidgen</b>	Creates new UUIDs. Each new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created, on the local system and on other systems, in the past and in the future
<b>wall</b>	Displays the contents of a file or, by default, its standard input, on the terminals of all currently logged in users
<b>wdctl</b>	Shows hardware watchdog status
<b>whereis</b>	Reports the location of the binary, source, and man page for the given command
<b>wipefs</b>	Wipes a filesystem signature from a device
<b>x86_64</b>	A symbolic link to setarch
libblkid	Contains routines for device identification and token extraction
libmount	Contains routines for block device mounting and unmounting
libuuid	Contains routines for generating unique identifiers for objects that may be accessible beyond the local system

## 6.67. Man-DB-2.6.6

The Man-DB package contains programs for finding and viewing man pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 27 MB

### 6.67.1. Installation of Man-DB

Prepare Man-DB for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --docdir=/usr/share/doc/man-db-2.6.6 \
            --sysconfdir=/etc \
            --disable-setuid \
            --with-browser=/usr/bin/lynx \
            --with-vgrind=/usr/bin/vgrind \
            --with-grap=/usr/bin/grap
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--disable-setuid*

This disables making the **man** program setuid to user man.

*--with-...*

These three parameters are used to set some default programs. **lynx** is a text-based web browser (see BLFS for installation instructions), **vgrind** converts program sources to Groff input, and **grap** is useful for typesetting graphs in Groff documents. The **vgrind** and **grap** programs are not normally needed for viewing manual pages. They are not part of LFS or BLFS, but you should be able to install them yourself after finishing LFS if you wish to do so.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.67.2. Non-English Manual Pages in LFS

The following table shows the character set that Man-DB assumes manual pages installed under `/usr/share/man/<11>` will be encoded with. In addition to this, Man-DB correctly determines if manual pages installed in that directory are UTF-8 encoded.

**Table 6.1. Expected character encoding of legacy 8-bit manual pages**

Language (code)	Encoding	Language (code)	Encoding
Danish (da)	ISO-8859-1	Croatian (hr)	ISO-8859-2

Language (code)	Encoding	Language (code)	Encoding
German (de)	ISO-8859-1	Hungarian (hu)	ISO-8859-2
English (en)	ISO-8859-1	Japanese (ja)	EUC-JP
Spanish (es)	ISO-8859-1	Korean (ko)	EUC-KR
Estonian (et)	ISO-8859-1	Lithuanian (lt)	ISO-8859-13
Finnish (fi)	ISO-8859-1	Latvian (lv)	ISO-8859-13
French (fr)	ISO-8859-1	Macedonian (mk)	ISO-8859-5
Irish (ga)	ISO-8859-1	Polish (pl)	ISO-8859-2
Galician (gl)	ISO-8859-1	Romanian (ro)	ISO-8859-2
Indonesian (id)	ISO-8859-1	Russian (ru)	KOI8-R
Icelandic (is)	ISO-8859-1	Slovak (sk)	ISO-8859-2
Italian (it)	ISO-8859-1	Slovenian (sl)	ISO-8859-2
Norwegian Bokmal (nb)	ISO-8859-1	Serbian Latin (sr@latin)	ISO-8859-2
Dutch (nl)	ISO-8859-1	Serbian (sr)	ISO-8859-5
Norwegian Nynorsk (nn)	ISO-8859-1	Turkish (tr)	ISO-8859-9
Norwegian (no)	ISO-8859-1	Ukrainian (uk)	KOI8-U
Portuguese (pt)	ISO-8859-1	Vietnamese (vi)	TCVN5712-1
Swedish (sv)	ISO-8859-1	Simplified Chinese (zh_CN)	GBK
Belarusian (be)	CP1251	Simplified Chinese, Singapore (zh_SG)	GBK
Bulgarian (bg)	CP1251	Traditional Chinese, Hong Kong (zh_HK)	BIG5HKSCS
Czech (cs)	ISO-8859-2	Traditional Chinese (zh_TW)	BIG5
Greek (el)	ISO-8859-7		



### Note

Manual pages in languages not in the list are not supported.

## 6.67.3. Contents of Man-DB

- Installed programs:** accessdb, apropos (link to whatis), catman, lexgrog, man, mandb, manpath, whatis, and zsoelim
- Installed libraries:** libman.so, libmandb.so
- Installed directories:** /usr/lib/man-db, /usr/share/doc/man-db-2.6.6

### Short Descriptions

**accessdb** Dumps the **whatis** database contents in human-readable form

<b>apropos</b>	Searches the <b>whatis</b> database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain a given string
<b>catman</b>	Creates or updates the pre-formatted manual pages
<b>lexgrog</b>	Displays one-line summary information about a given manual page
<b>man</b>	Formats and displays the requested manual page
<b>mandb</b>	Creates or updates the <b>whatis</b> database
<b>manpath</b>	Displays the contents of \$MANPATH or (if \$MANPATH is not set) a suitable search path based on the settings in man.conf and the user's environment
<b>whatis</b>	Searches the <b>whatis</b> database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain the given keyword as a separate word
<b>zsoelim</b>	Reads files and replaces lines of the form <i>.so file</i> by the contents of the mentioned <i>file</i>
libman	Contains run-time support for <b>man</b>
libmandb	Contains run-time support for <b>man</b>

## 6.68. Tar-1.27.1

The Tar package contains an archiving program.

**Approximate build time:** 2.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 34 MB

### 6.68.1. Installation of Tar

Add a program that generates a man page for tar from the source code:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../tar-1.27.1-manpage-1.patch
```

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```
FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1 \
./configure --prefix=/usr \
            --bindir=/bin
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

FORCE\_UNSAFE\_CONFIGURE=1

This forces the test for `mknod` to be run as root. It is generally considered dangerous to run this test as the root user, but as it is being run on a system that has only been partially built, overriding it is OK.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (about 1 SBU), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
make -C doc install-html docdir=/usr/share/doc/tar-1.27.1
```

Finally, generate the man page and place it in the proper location:

```
perl tarman > /usr/share/man/man1/tar.1
```

### 6.68.2. Contents of Tar

**Installed programs:** rmt and tar

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/tar-1.27.1

#### Short Descriptions

**rmt** Remotely manipulates a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection

**tar** Creates, extracts files from, and lists the contents of archives, also known as tarballs



## 6.69. Texinfo-5.2

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 101 MB

### 6.69.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Optionally, install the components belonging in a TeX installation:

```
make TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf install-tex
```

**The meaning of the make parameter:**

```
TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf
```

The `TEXMF` makefile variable holds the location of the root of the TeX tree if, for example, a TeX package will be installed later.

The Info documentation system uses a plain text file to hold its list of menu entries. The file is located at `/usr/share/info/dir`. Unfortunately, due to occasional problems in the Makefiles of various packages, it can sometimes get out of sync with the info pages installed on the system. If the `/usr/share/info/dir` file ever needs to be recreated, the following optional commands will accomplish the task:

```
cd /usr/share/info
rm -v dir
for f in *
do install-info $f dir 2>/dev/null
done
```

### 6.69.2. Contents of Texinfo

**Installed programs:** info, infokey, install-info, makeinfo (link to texi2any), pdftexi2dvi, pod2texi, texi2any, texi2dvi, texi2pdf, and texindex

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/texinfo

## Short Descriptions

<b>info</b>	Used to read info pages which are similar to man pages, but often go much deeper than just explaining all the available command line options. For example, compare <b>man bison</b> and <b>info bison</b> .
<b>infokey</b>	Compiles a source file containing Info customizations into a binary format
<b>install-info</b>	Used to install info pages; it updates entries in the <b>info</b> index file
<b>makeinfo</b>	Translates the given Texinfo source documents into info pages, plain text, or HTML
<b>pdftexi2dvi</b>	Used to format the given Texinfo document into a Portable Document Format (PDF) file
<b>pod2texi</b>	Converts Pod to Texinfo format
<b>texi2any</b>	Translate Texinfo source documentation to various other formats
<b>texi2dvi</b>	Used to format the given Texinfo document into a device-independent file that can be printed
<b>texi2pdf</b>	Used to format the given Texinfo document into a Portable Document Format (PDF) file
<b>texindex</b>	Used to sort Texinfo index files

## 6.70. Vim-7.4

The Vim package contains a powerful text editor.

**Approximate build time:** 1.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 121 MB



### Alternatives to Vim

If you prefer another editor—such as Emacs, Joe, or Nano—please refer to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/editors.html> for suggested installation instructions.

### 6.70.1. Installation of Vim

First, change the default location of the `vimrc` configuration file to `/etc`:

```
echo '#define SYS_VIMRC_FILE "/etc/vimrc"' >> src/feature.h
```

Prepare Vim for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-multibyte
```

**The meaning of the configure options:**

*--enable-multibyte*

This switch enables support for editing files in multibyte character encodings. This is needed if using a locale with a multibyte character set. This switch is also helpful to be able to edit text files initially created in Linux distributions like Fedora that use UTF-8 as a default character set.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

However, this test suite outputs a lot of binary data to the screen, which can cause issues with the settings of the current terminal. This can be resolved by redirecting the output to a log file. A successful test will result in the words "ALL DONE" at completion.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Many users are used to using `vi` instead of `vim`. To allow execution of `vim` when users habitually enter `vi`, create a symlink for both the binary and the man page in the provided languages:

```
ln -sv vim /usr/bin/vi
for L in /usr/share/man/{,*/}man1/vim.1; do
    ln -sv vim.1 $(dirname $L)/vi.1
done
```

By default, Vim's documentation is installed in `/usr/share/vim`. The following symlink allows the documentation to be accessed via `/usr/share/doc/vim-7.4`, making it consistent with the location of documentation for other packages:

```
ln -sv ../vim/vim74/doc /usr/share/doc/vim-7.4
```

If an X Window System is going to be installed on the LFS system, it may be necessary to recompile Vim after installing X. Vim comes with a GUI version of the editor that requires X and some additional libraries to be installed. For more information on this process, refer to the Vim documentation and the Vim installation page in the BLFS book at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/editors.html#postlfs-editors-vim>.

## 6.70.2. Configuring Vim

By default, **vim** runs in vi-incompatible mode. This may be new to users who have used other editors in the past. The “`nocompatible`” setting is included below to highlight the fact that a new behavior is being used. It also reminds those who would change to “`compatible`” mode that it should be the first setting in the configuration file. This is necessary because it changes other settings, and overrides must come after this setting. Create a default **vim** configuration file by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/vimrc << "EOF"
" Begin /etc/vimrc

set nocompatible
set backspace=2
syntax on
if (&term == "iterm") || (&term == "putty")
    set background=dark
endif

" End /etc/vimrc
EOF
```

The `set nocompatible` setting makes **vim** behave in a more useful way (the default) than the vi-compatible manner. Remove the “no” to keep the old **vi** behavior. The `set backspace=2` setting allows backspacing over line breaks, autoindents, and the start of insert. The `syntax on` parameter enables vim's syntax highlighting. Finally, the `if` statement with the `set background=dark` setting corrects **vim**'s guess about the background color of some terminal emulators. This gives the highlighting a better color scheme for use on the black background of these programs.

Documentation for other available options can be obtained by running the following command:

```
vim -c ':options'
```



## Note

By default, Vim only installs spell files for the English language. To install spell files for your preferred language, download the \*.spl and optionally, the \*.sug files for your language and character encoding from <ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/runtime/spell/> and save them to /usr/share/vim/vim74/spell/.

To use these spell files, some configuration in /etc/vimrc is needed, e.g.:

```
set spelllang=en,ru
set spell
```

For more information, see the appropriate README file located at the URL above.

### 6.70.3. Contents of Vim

**Installed programs:** ex ([link to vim](#)), rview ([link to vim](#)), rvim ([link to vim](#)), vi ([link to vim](#)), view ([link to vim](#)), vim, vimdiff ([link to vim](#)), vimtutor, and xxd

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/vim

#### Short Descriptions

<b>ex</b>	Starts <b>vim</b> in ex mode
<b>rview</b>	Is a restricted version of <b>view</b> ; no shell commands can be started and <b>view</b> cannot be suspended
<b>rvim</b>	Is a restricted version of <b>vim</b> ; no shell commands can be started and <b>vim</b> cannot be suspended
<b>vi</b>	Link to <b>vim</b>
<b>view</b>	Starts <b>vim</b> in read-only mode
<b>vim</b>	Is the editor
<b>vimdiff</b>	Edits two or three versions of a file with <b>vim</b> and show differences
<b>vimtutor</b>	Teaches the basic keys and commands of <b>vim</b>
<b>xxd</b>	Creates a hex dump of the given file; it can also do the reverse, so it can be used for binary patching

## 6.71. About Debugging Symbols

Most programs and libraries are, by default, compiled with debugging symbols included (with `gcc`'s `-g` option). This means that when debugging a program or library that was compiled with debugging information included, the debugger can provide not only memory addresses, but also the names of the routines and variables.

However, the inclusion of these debugging symbols enlarges a program or library significantly. The following is an example of the amount of space these symbols occupy:

- A `bash` binary with debugging symbols: 1200 KB
- A `bash` binary without debugging symbols: 480 KB
- Glibc and GCC files (`/lib` and `/usr/lib`) with debugging symbols: 87 MB
- Glibc and GCC files without debugging symbols: 16 MB

Sizes may vary depending on which compiler and C library were used, but when comparing programs with and without debugging symbols, the difference will usually be a factor between two and five.

Because most users will never use a debugger on their system software, a lot of disk space can be regained by removing these symbols. The next section shows how to strip all debugging symbols from the programs and libraries.

## 6.72. Stripping Again

If the intended user is not a programmer and does not plan to do any debugging on the system software, the system size can be decreased by about 90 MB by removing the debugging symbols from binaries and libraries. This causes no inconvenience other than not being able to debug the software fully anymore.

Most people who use the command mentioned below do not experience any difficulties. However, it is easy to make a typo and render the new system unusable, so before running the `strip` command, it is a good idea to make a backup of the LFS system in its current state.

Before performing the stripping, take special care to ensure that none of the binaries that are about to be stripped are running. If unsure whether the user entered `chroot` with the command given in Section 6.4, “Entering the Chroot Environment,” first exit from `chroot`:

```
logout
```

Then reenter it with:

```
chroot $LFS /tools/bin/env -i \
  HOME=/root TERM=$TERM PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \
  /tools/bin/bash --login
```

Now the binaries and libraries can be safely stripped:

```
/tools/bin/find /{,usr/}{bin,lib,sbin} -type f \
  -exec /tools/bin/strip --strip-debug '{} ' ';
```

A large number of files will be reported as having their file format not recognized. These warnings can be safely ignored. These warnings indicate that those files are scripts instead of binaries.

## 6.73. Cleaning Up

Finally, clean up some extra files left around from running tests:

```
rm -rf /tmp/*
```

From now on, when reentering the chroot environment after exiting, use the following modified chroot command:

```
chroot "$LFS" /usr/bin/env -i \
  HOME=/root TERM="$TERM" PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \
  /bin/bash --login
```

The reason for this is that the programs in `/tools` are no longer needed. Since they are no longer needed you can delete the `/tools` directory if so desired.



### Note

Removing `/tools` will also remove the temporary copies of Tcl, Expect, and DejaGNU which were used for running the toolchain tests. If you need these programs later on, they will need to be recompiled and re-installed. The BLFS book has instructions for this (see <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/>).

```
rm -rf /tools
```

If the virtual kernel file systems have been unmounted, either manually or through a reboot, ensure that the virtual kernel file systems are mounted when reentering the chroot. This process was explained in Section 6.2.2, “Mounting and Populating `/dev`” and Section 6.2.3, “Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems”.

# Chapter 7. Basic System Configuration

## 7.1. Introduction

This chapter discusses configuration files and boot scripts. First, the general configuration files needed to set up networking are presented.

- Section 7.3, “General Network Configuration.”
- Section 7.4, “Customizing the `/etc/hosts` File.”

Second, issues that affect the proper setup of devices are discussed.

- Section 7.5, “Device and Module Handling on an LFS System.”
- Section 7.6, “Creating Custom Symlinks to Devices.”

Third, configuring the hostname, system clock, and keyboard layout.

- Section 7.7, “Configuring the system hostname.”
- Section 7.8, “Configuring the system clock.”
- Section 7.9, “Configuring the Linux Console.”

Finally, there is a brief introduction to the scripts and configuration files used when the user logs into the system.

- Section 7.10, “Configuring the System Locale.”
- Section 7.11, “Creating the `/etc/inputrc` File.”



## 7.2. LFS-Network-Scripts-20140214

The LFS-Network-Scripts package contains a set of scripts to configure the network at bootup and deconfigure it at shutdown.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 140 KB

### 7.2.1. Installation of LFS-Network-Scripts

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 7.2.2. Contents of LFS-Network-Scripts

**Installed scripts:** ifdown, ifup, ipv4-static

**Installed systemd units:** ifupdown@.service, nscd.service

**Installed directories:** /etc/sysconfig, /lib/services, /lib/lsb (symbolic link)

#### Short Descriptions

**ifdown** Stops a network device.

**ifup** Initializes a network device.

**ipv4-static** Provides the functionality needed to assign a static Internet Protocol (IP) address to a network interface.

## 7.3. General Network Configuration

This section only applies if a network card is to be configured.

### 7.3.1. Creating Network Interface Configuration Files

Which interfaces are brought up and down by the network script depends on the files in `/etc/sysconfig/`. This directory should contain a file for each interface to be configured, such as `ifconfig.xyz`, where “xyz” is required to be a Network Card Interface name (e.g. `eth0`). Inside this file are attributes to this interface, such as its IP address(es), subnet masks, and so forth. It is necessary that the stem of the filename be *ifconfig*.



#### Note

Udev may assign random Network Card Interface names for some network cards such as `enp2s1`. If you are not sure what your Network Card Interface name is, you can always run **ip l** after you have booted your system. Again, it is important that `ifconfig.xyz` is named after correct Network Card Interface name (e.g. `ifconfig.enp2s1` or `ifconfig.eth0`) or Systemd will fail to bring up your network interface.

The following command creates a sample file for the `eth0` device with a static IP address:

```
cd /etc/sysconfig/
cat > ifconfig.eth0 << "EOF"
IFACE=eth0
SERVICE=ipv4-static
IP=192.168.1.1
GATEWAY=192.168.1.2
PREFIX=24
BROADCAST=192.168.1.255
EOF
```

The values of these variables must be changed in every file to match the proper setup.

The `IFACE` variable defines the interface name, for example, `eth0`. It is required for all network device configuration files.

The `SERVICE` variable defines the method used for obtaining the IP address. The LFS-Network-Scripts package has a modular IP assignment format, and creating additional files in the `/lib/services/` directory allows other IP assignment methods. This is commonly used for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), which is addressed in the BLFS book.

The `GATEWAY` variable should contain the default gateway IP address, if one is present. If not, then comment out the variable entirely.

The `PREFIX` variable contains the number of bits used in the subnet. Each octet in an IP address is 8 bits. If the subnet's netmask is `255.255.255.0`, then it is using the first three octets (24 bits) to specify the network number. If the netmask is `255.255.255.240`, it would be using the first 28 bits. Prefixes longer than 24 bits are commonly used by DSL and cable-based Internet Service Providers (ISPs). In this example (`PREFIX=24`), the netmask is `255.255.255.0`. Adjust the `PREFIX` variable according to your specific subnet. If omitted, the `PREFIX` defaults to 24.

For more information see the **ifup** man page.

### 7.3.2. Configuring the Network Interface Card at boot

Enabling of the Network Interface Card configuration is done per interface. To enable Network Interface Card configuration at boot, run:

```
systemctl enable ifupdown@eth0
```

To disable previously enabled Network Interface Card configuration at boot, run:

```
systemctl disable ifupdown@eth0
```

To manually start the Network Interface Card configuration, run:

```
systemctl start ifupdown@eth0
```

Replace `eth0` with the correct Network Interface Card name as described on the beginning of this page.

### 7.3.3. Creating the `/etc/resolv.conf` File

If the system is going to be connected to the Internet, it will need some means of Domain Name Service (DNS) name resolution to resolve Internet domain names to IP addresses, and vice versa. This is best achieved by placing the IP address of the DNS server, available from the ISP or network administrator, into `/etc/resolv.conf`. Create the file by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/resolv.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/resolv.conf

domain <Your Domain Name>
nameserver <IP address of your primary nameserver>
nameserver <IP address of your secondary nameserver>

# End /etc/resolv.conf
EOF
```

The `domain` statement can be omitted or replaced with a `search` statement. See the man page for `resolv.conf` for more details.

Replace `<IP address of the nameserver>` with the IP address of the DNS most appropriate for the setup. There will often be more than one entry (requirements demand secondary servers for fallback capability). If you only need or want one DNS server, remove the second `nameserver` line from the file. The IP address may also be a router on the local network.



#### Note

The Google Public IPv4 DNS addresses are 8.8.8.8 and 8.8.4.4.

## 7.4. Customizing the `/etc/hosts` File

If a network card is to be configured, decide on the IP address, fully-qualified domain name (FQDN), and possible aliases for use in the `/etc/hosts` file. The syntax is:

```
IP_address myhost.example.org aliases
```

Unless the computer is to be visible to the Internet (i.e., there is a registered domain and a valid block of assigned IP addresses—most users do not have this), make sure that the IP address is in the private network IP address range. Valid ranges are:

Private Network Address Range	Normal Prefix
10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254	8
172.x.0.1 - 172.x.255.254	16
192.168.y.1 - 192.168.y.254	24

x can be any number in the range 16-31. y can be any number in the range 0-255.

A valid private IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be lfs.example.org.

Even if not using a network card, a valid FQDN is still required. This is necessary for certain programs to operate correctly.

Create the `/etc/hosts` file by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (network card version)

127.0.0.1 localhost
<192.168.1.1> <HOSTNAME.example.org> [alias1] [alias2 ...]

# End /etc/hosts (network card version)
EOF
```

The `<192.168.1.1>` and `<HOSTNAME.example.org>` values need to be changed for specific uses or requirements (if assigned an IP address by a network/system administrator and the machine will be connected to an existing network). The optional alias name(s) can be omitted.

If a network card is not going to be configured, create the `/etc/hosts` file by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (no network card version)

127.0.0.1 <HOSTNAME.example.org> <HOSTNAME> localhost

# End /etc/hosts (no network card version)
EOF
```

## 7.5. Device and Module Handling on an LFS System

In Chapter 6, we installed Udev from the Systemd source package. Before we go into the details regarding how this works, a brief history of previous methods of handling devices is in order.

Linux systems in general traditionally use a static device creation method, whereby a great many device nodes are created under `/dev` (sometimes literally thousands of nodes), regardless of whether the corresponding hardware devices actually exist. This is typically done via a **MAKEDEV** script, which contains a number of calls to the **mknod** program with the relevant major and minor device numbers for every possible device that might exist in the world.

Using the Udev method, only those devices which are detected by the kernel get device nodes created for them. Because these device nodes will be created each time the system boots, they will be stored on a `devtmpfs` file system (a virtual file system that resides entirely in system memory). Device nodes do not require much space, so the memory that is used is negligible.

## 7.5.1. History

In February 2000, a new filesystem called `devfs` was merged into the 2.3.46 kernel and was made available during the 2.4 series of stable kernels. Although it was present in the kernel source itself, this method of creating devices dynamically never received overwhelming support from the core kernel developers.

The main problem with the approach adopted by `devfs` was the way it handled device detection, creation, and naming. The latter issue, that of device node naming, was perhaps the most critical. It is generally accepted that if device names are allowed to be configurable, then the device naming policy should be up to a system administrator, not imposed on them by any particular developer(s). The `devfs` file system also suffers from race conditions that are inherent in its design and cannot be fixed without a substantial revision to the kernel. It was marked as deprecated for a long period – due to a lack of maintenance – and was finally removed from the kernel in June, 2006.

With the development of the unstable 2.5 kernel tree, later released as the 2.6 series of stable kernels, a new virtual filesystem called `sysfs` came to be. The job of `sysfs` is to export a view of the system's hardware configuration to userspace processes. With this userspace-visible representation, the possibility of seeing a userspace replacement for `devfs` became much more realistic.

## 7.5.2. Udev Implementation

### 7.5.2.1. Sysfs

The `sysfs` filesystem was mentioned briefly above. One may wonder how `sysfs` knows about the devices present on a system and what device numbers should be used for them. Drivers that have been compiled into the kernel directly register their objects with a `sysfs` (`devtmpfs` internally) as they are detected by the kernel. For drivers compiled as modules, this registration will happen when the module is loaded. Once the `sysfs` filesystem is mounted (on `/sys`), data which the drivers register with `sysfs` are available to userspace processes and to `udev` for processing (including modifications to device nodes).

### 7.5.2.2. Device Node Creation

Device files are created by the kernel by the `devtmpfs` filesystem. Any driver that wishes to register a device node will go through `devtmpfs` (via the driver core) to do it. When a `devtmpfs` instance is mounted on `/dev`, the device node will initially be created with a fixed name, permissions, and owner.

A short time later, the kernel will send a `uevent` to **udev**. Based on the rules specified in the files within the `/etc/udev/rules.d`, `/lib/udev/rules.d`, and `/run/udev/rules.d` directories, **udev** will create additional symlinks to the device node, or change its permissions, owner, or group, or modify the internal **udev** database entry (name) for that object.

The rules in these three directories are numbered in a similar fashion to the LFS-Bootscripts package and all three directories are merged together. If **udev** can't find a rule for the device it is creating, it will leave the permissions and ownership at whatever `devtmpfs` used initially.

### 7.5.2.3. Module Loading

Device drivers compiled as modules may have aliases built into them. Aliases are visible in the output of the **modinfo** program and are usually related to the bus-specific identifiers of devices supported by a module. For example, the *snd-fm801* driver supports PCI devices with vendor ID 0x1319 and device ID 0x0801, and has an alias of “pci:v00001319d00000801sv\*sd\*bc04sc01i\*”. For most devices, the bus driver exports the alias of the driver that would handle the device via `sysfs`. E.g., the `/sys/bus/pci/devices/0000:00:0d.0/modalias` file might contain the string “pci:v00001319d00000801sv00001319sd00001319bc04sc01i00”. The default rules provided with Udev will cause **udev** to call out to `/sbin/modprobe` with the contents of the `MODALIAS` uevent environment variable (which should be the same as the contents of the `modalias` file in `sysfs`), thus loading all modules whose aliases match this string after wildcard expansion.

In this example, this means that, in addition to *snd-fm801*, the obsolete (and unwanted) *forte* driver will be loaded if it is available. See below for ways in which the loading of unwanted drivers can be prevented.

The kernel itself is also able to load modules for network protocols, filesystems and NLS support on demand.

### 7.5.2.4. Handling Hotpluggable/Dynamic Devices

When you plug in a device, such as a Universal Serial Bus (USB) MP3 player, the kernel recognizes that the device is now connected and generates a uevent. This uevent is then handled by **udev** as described above.

## 7.5.3. Problems with Loading Modules and Creating Devices

There are a few possible problems when it comes to automatically creating device nodes.

### 7.5.3.1. A kernel module is not loaded automatically

Udev will only load a module if it has a bus-specific alias and the bus driver properly exports the necessary aliases to `sysfs`. In other cases, one should arrange module loading by other means. With Linux-3.13.3, Udev is known to load properly-written drivers for INPUT, IDE, PCI, USB, SCSI, SERIO, and FireWire devices.

To determine if the device driver you require has the necessary support for Udev, run **modinfo** with the module name as the argument. Now try locating the device directory under `/sys/bus` and check whether there is a `modalias` file there.

If the `modalias` file exists in `sysfs`, the driver supports the device and can talk to it directly, but doesn't have the alias, it is a bug in the driver. Load the driver without the help from Udev and expect the issue to be fixed later.

If there is no `modalias` file in the relevant directory under `/sys/bus`, this means that the kernel developers have not yet added `modalias` support to this bus type. With Linux-3.13.3, this is the case with ISA busses. Expect this issue to be fixed in later kernel versions.

Udev is not intended to load “wrapper” drivers such as *snd-pcm-oss* and non-hardware drivers such as *loop* at all.

### 7.5.3.2. A kernel module is not loaded automatically, and Udev is not intended to load it

If the “wrapper” module only enhances the functionality provided by some other module (e.g., *snd-pcm-oss* enhances the functionality of *snd-pcm* by making the sound cards available to OSS applications), configure **modprobe** to load the wrapper after Udev loads the wrapped module. To do this, add a “softdep” line in any `/etc/modprobe.d/<filename>.conf` file. For example:

```
softdep snd-pcm post: snd-pcm-oss
```

Note that the “softdep” command also allows `pre:` dependencies, or a mixture of both `pre:` and `post:`. See the `modprobe.d(5)` manual page for more information on “softdep” syntax and capabilities.

If the module in question is not a wrapper and is useful by itself, configure the **modules** bootscript to load this module on system boot. To do this, add the module name to the `/etc/sysconfig/modules` file on a separate line. This works for wrapper modules too, but is suboptimal in that case.

### 7.5.3.3. Udev loads some unwanted module

Either don't build the module, or blacklist it in a `/etc/modprobe.d/blacklist.conf` file as done with the *forte* module in the example below:

```
blacklist forte
```

Blacklisted modules can still be loaded manually with the explicit **modprobe** command.

### 7.5.3.4. Udev creates a device incorrectly, or makes a wrong symlink

This usually happens if a rule unexpectedly matches a device. For example, a poorly-written rule can match both a SCSI disk (as desired) and the corresponding SCSI generic device (incorrectly) by vendor. Find the offending rule and make it more specific, with the help of the **udevadm info** command.

### 7.5.3.5. Udev rule works unreliably

This may be another manifestation of the previous problem. If not, and your rule uses `sysfs` attributes, it may be a kernel timing issue, to be fixed in later kernels. For now, you can work around it by creating a rule that waits for the used `sysfs` attribute and appending it to the `/etc/udev/rules.d/10-wait_for_sysfs.rules` file (create this file if it does not exist). Please notify the LFS Development list if you do so and it helps.

### 7.5.3.6. Udev does not create a device

Further text assumes that the driver is built statically into the kernel or already loaded as a module, and that you have already checked that Udev doesn't create a misnamed device.

Udev has no information needed to create a device node if a kernel driver does not export its data to `sysfs`. This is most common with third party drivers from outside the kernel tree. Create a static device node in `/lib/udev/devices` with the appropriate major/minor numbers (see the file `devices.txt` inside the kernel documentation or the documentation provided by the third party driver vendor). The static device node will be copied to `/dev` by the **udev** bootscript.

### 7.5.3.7. Device naming order changes randomly after rebooting

This is due to the fact that Udev, by design, handles uevents and loads modules in parallel, and thus in an unpredictable order. This will never be “fixed”. You should not rely upon the kernel device names being stable. Instead, create your own rules that make symlinks with stable names based on some stable attributes of the device, such as a serial number or the output of various `*_id` utilities installed by Udev. See Section 7.6, “Creating Custom Symlinks to Devices” and Section 7.3, “General Network Configuration” for examples.

## 7.5.4. Useful Reading

Additional helpful documentation is available at the following sites:

- A Userspace Implementation of `devfs` [http://www.kroah.com/linux/talks/ols\\_2003\\_udev\\_paper/Reprint-Kroah-Hartman-OLS2003.pdf](http://www.kroah.com/linux/talks/ols_2003_udev_paper/Reprint-Kroah-Hartman-OLS2003.pdf)

- The `sysfs` Filesystem <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/people/mochel/doc/papers/ols-2005/mochel.pdf>

## 7.6. Creating Custom Symlinks to Devices

### 7.6.1. Dealing with duplicate devices

As explained in Section 7.5, “Device and Module Handling on an LFS System”, the order in which devices with the same function appear in `/dev` is essentially random. E.g., if you have a USB web camera and a TV tuner, sometimes `/dev/video0` refers to the camera and `/dev/video1` refers to the tuner, and sometimes after a reboot the order changes to the opposite one. For all classes of hardware except sound cards and network cards, this is fixable by creating udev rules for custom persistent symlinks. The case of network cards is covered separately in Section 7.3, “General Network Configuration”, and sound card configuration can be found in *BLFS*.

For each of your devices that is likely to have this problem (even if the problem doesn't exist in your current Linux distribution), find the corresponding directory under `/sys/class` or `/sys/block`. For video devices, this may be `/sys/class/video4linux/videoX`. Figure out the attributes that identify the device uniquely (usually, vendor and product IDs and/or serial numbers work):

```
udevadm info -a -p /sys/class/video4linux/video0
```

Then write rules that create the symlinks, e.g.:

```
cat > /etc/udev/rules.d/83-duplicate_devs.rules << "EOF"

# Persistent symlinks for webcam and tuner
KERNEL=="video*", ATTRS{idProduct}=="1910", ATTRS{idVendor}=="0d81", \
    SYMLINK+="webcam"
KERNEL=="video*", ATTRS{device}=="0x036f", ATTRS{vendor}=="0x109e", \
    SYMLINK+="tvtuner"

EOF
```

The result is that `/dev/video0` and `/dev/video1` devices still refer randomly to the tuner and the web camera (and thus should never be used directly), but there are symlinks `/dev/tvtuner` and `/dev/webcam` that always point to the correct device.

## 7.7. Configuring the system hostname

Systemd reads `/etc/hostname` to determine which hostname should be set.

Create the `/etc/hostname` file and enter a hostname by running:

```
echo "<lfs>" > /etc/hostname
```

`<lfs>` needs to be replaced with the name given to the computer. Do not enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) here. That information is put in the `/etc/hosts` file.

## 7.8. Configuring the system clock

This section discusses how to configure the **systemd-timedated** system service, which configures system clock and timezone.



Systemd provides a **timedatectl** utility which is used to communicate with **systemd-timedated**. It can be used to set the system clock in local time or UTC time, depending on the hardware clock setting. By default, **systemd-timedated** will assume that clock is set to UTC time.

If you cannot remember whether or not the hardware clock is set to UTC, find out by running the **hwclock --localtime --show** command. This will display what the current time is according to the hardware clock. If this time matches whatever your watch says, then the hardware clock is set to local time. If the output from **hwclock** is not local time, chances are it is set to UTC time. Verify this by adding or subtracting the proper amount of hours for the timezone to the time shown by **hwclock**. For example, if you are currently in the MST timezone, which is also known as GMT -0700, add seven hours to the local time.

If your clock is set to local time, tell **systemd-timedated** about it by running the following command:

```
timedatectl set-local-rtc 1
```

**timedatectl** can also be used to change system time and time zone.

To change your current system time, issue:

```
timedatectl set-time YYYY:MM:DD HH:MM:SS
```

Hardware clock will also be updated accordingly.

To change your current time zone, issue:

```
timedatectl set-timezone TIMEZONE
```

You can get list of available time zones by running:

```
timedatectl list-timezones
```



### Note

Please note that **timedatectl** command can be used only on a system booted with Systemd.

## 7.9. Configuring the Linux Console

This section discusses how to configure the **systemd-vconsole-setup** system service, which configures the virtual console font and console keymap.

The **systemd-vconsole-setup** service reads the `/etc/vconsole.conf` file for configuration information. Decide which keymap and screen font will be used. Various language-specific HOWTOs can also help with this, see <http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/HOWTO-INDEX/other-lang.html>. Examine **localectl list-keymaps** output for a list of valid console keymaps. Look in `/usr/share/consolefonts` directory for valid screen fonts.

The `/etc/vconsole.conf` file should contain lines of the form: `VARIABLE="value"`. The following variables are recognized:

### KEYMAP

This variable specifies the key mapping table for the keyboard. If unset, it defaults to `us`.

### KEYMAP\_TOGGLE

This variable can be used to configure a second toggle keymap and is unset by default.

**FONT**

This variable specifies the font used by the virtual console.

**FONT\_MAP**

This variable specifies the console map to be used.

**FONT\_UNIMAP**

This variable specifies the unicode font map.

An example for a German keyboard and console is given below:

```
cat > /etc/vconsole.conf << "EOF"
KEYMAP=de-latin1
FONT=Lat2-Terminus16
EOF
```

You can change **KEYMAP** value at runtime by using the **localectl** utility:

```
localectl set-keymap MAP
```

**Note**

Please note that **localectl** command can be used only on a system booted with Systemd.

You can also use **localectl** utility with the corresponding parameters to change X11 keyboard layout, model, variant and options:

```
localectl set-x11-keymap LAYOUT [MODEL] [VARIANT] [OPTIONS]
```

To list possible values for **localectl set-x11-keymap** parameters, run **localectl** with parameters listed below:

**list-x11-keymap-models**

Show known X11 keyboard mapping models.

**list-x11-keymap-layouts**

Show known X11 keyboard mapping layouts.

**list-x11-keymap-variants**

Show known X11 keyboard mapping variants.

**list-x11-keymap-options**

Show known X11 keyboard mapping options.

**Note**

Using any of the parameters listed above requires XKeyboard Config package from BLFS.

## 7.10. Configuring the System Locale

The `/etc/locale.conf` below sets some environment variables necessary for native language support. Setting them properly results in:

- The output of programs translated into the native language
- Correct classification of characters into letters, digits and other classes. This is necessary for **bash** to properly accept non-ASCII characters in command lines in non-English locales
- The correct alphabetical sorting order for the country
- Appropriate default paper size
- Correct formatting of monetary, time, and date values

Replace `<ll>` below with the two-letter code for the desired language (e.g., “en”) and `<CC>` with the two-letter code for the appropriate country (e.g., “GB”). `<charmap>` should be replaced with the canonical charmap for your chosen locale. Optional modifiers such as “@euro” may also be present.

The list of all locales supported by Glibc can be obtained by running the following command:

```
locale -a
```

Charmaps can have a number of aliases, e.g., “ISO-8859-1” is also referred to as “iso8859-1” and “iso88591”. Some applications cannot handle the various synonyms correctly (e.g., require that “UTF-8” is written as “UTF-8”, not “utf8”), so it is safest in most cases to choose the canonical name for a particular locale. To determine the canonical name, run the following command, where `<locale name>` is the output given by **locale -a** for your preferred locale (“en\_GB.iso88591” in our example).

```
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale charmap
```

For the “en\_GB.iso88591” locale, the above command will print:

```
ISO-8859-1
```

This results in a final locale setting of “en\_GB.ISO-8859-1”. It is important that the locale found using the heuristic above is tested prior to it being added to the Bash startup files:

```
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale language
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale charmap
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale int_curr_symbol
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale int_prefix
```

The above commands should print the language name, the character encoding used by the locale, the local currency, and the prefix to dial before the telephone number in order to get into the country. If any of the commands above fail with a message similar to the one shown below, this means that your locale was either not installed in Chapter 6 or is not supported by the default installation of Glibc.

```
locale: Cannot set LC_* to default locale: No such file or directory
```

If this happens, you should either install the desired locale using the **localedef** command, or consider choosing a different locale. Further instructions assume that there are no such error messages from Glibc.

Some packages beyond LFS may also lack support for your chosen locale. One example is the X library (part of the X Window System), which outputs the following error message if the locale does not exactly match one of the character map names in its internal files:

```
Warning: locale not supported by Xlib, locale set to C
```

In several cases Xlib expects that the character map will be listed in uppercase notation with canonical dashes. For instance, "ISO-8859-1" rather than "iso88591". It is also possible to find an appropriate specification by removing the charmap part of the locale specification. This can be checked by running the **locale charmap** command in both locales. For example, one would have to change "de\_DE.ISO-8859-15@euro" to "de\_DE@euro" in order to get this locale recognized by Xlib.

Other packages can also function incorrectly (but may not necessarily display any error messages) if the locale name does not meet their expectations. In those cases, investigating how other Linux distributions support your locale might provide some useful information.

Once the proper locale settings have been determined, create the `/etc/locale.conf` file:

```
cat > /etc/locale.conf << "EOF"
LANG=<ll>_<CC>.<charmap><@modifiers>
EOF
```

Note that you can modify `/etc/locale.conf` with Systemd **localectl** utility. To use **localectl** for the example above, run:

```
localectl set-locale LANG="<ll>_<CC>.<charmap><@modifiers>"
```

You can also specify other language specific environment variables such as `LANG`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_NUMERIC` or any other environment variable from **locale** output. Just separate them with a space. An example where `LANG` is set as `en_US.UTF-8` but `LC_CTYPE` is set as just `en_US` is:

```
localectl set-locale LANG="en_US.UTF-8" LC_CTYPE="en_US"
```



### Note

Please note that **localectl** command can be used only on a system booted with Systemd.

The “C” (default) and “en\_US” (the recommended one for United States English users) locales are different. “C” uses the US-ASCII 7-bit character set, and treats bytes with the high bit set as invalid characters. That's why, e.g., the **ls** command substitutes them with question marks in that locale. Also, an attempt to send mail with such characters from Mutt or Pine results in non-RFC-conforming messages being sent (the charset in the outgoing mail is indicated as “unknown 8-bit”). So you can use the “C” locale only if you are sure that you will never need 8-bit characters.

UTF-8 based locales are not supported well by many programs. Work is in progress to document and, if possible, fix such problems, see <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/introduction/locale-issues.html>.

## 7.11. Creating the `/etc/inputrc` File

The `inputrc` file handles keyboard mapping for specific situations. This file is the startup file used by Readline — the input-related library — used by Bash and most other shells.

Most people do not need user-specific keyboard mappings so the command below creates a global `/etc/inputrc` used by everyone who logs in. If you later decide you need to override the defaults on a per-user basis, you can create a `.inputrc` file in the user's home directory with the modified mappings.

For more information on how to edit the `inputrc` file, see **info bash** under the *Readline Init File* section. **info readline** is also a good source of information.

Below is a generic global `inputrc` along with comments to explain what the various options do. Note that comments cannot be on the same line as commands. Create the file using the following command:

```
cat > /etc/inputrc << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/inputrc
# Modified by Chris Lynn <roryo@roryo.dynup.net>

# Allow the command prompt to wrap to the next line
set horizontal-scroll-mode Off

# Enable 8bit input
set meta-flag On
set input-meta On

# Turns off 8th bit stripping
set convert-meta Off

# Keep the 8th bit for display
set output-meta On

# none, visible or audible
set bell-style none

# All of the following map the escape sequence of the value
# contained in the 1st argument to the readline specific functions
"\eOd": backward-word
"\eOc": forward-word

# for linux console
"\e[1~": beginning-of-line
"\e[4~": end-of-line
"\e[5~": beginning-of-history
"\e[6~": end-of-history
"\e[3~": delete-char
"\e[2~": quoted-insert

# for xterm
"\eOH": beginning-of-line
"\eOF": end-of-line

# for Konsole
"\e[H": beginning-of-line
"\e[F": end-of-line

# End /etc/inputrc
EOF
```

# Chapter 8. Making the LFS System Bootable

## 8.1. Introduction

It is time to make the LFS system bootable. This chapter discusses creating an `fstab` file, building a kernel for the new LFS system, and installing the GRUB boot loader so that the LFS system can be selected for booting at startup.

## 8.2. Creating the `/etc/fstab` File

The `/etc/fstab` file is used by some programs to determine where file systems are to be mounted by default, in which order, and which must be checked (for integrity errors) prior to mounting. Create a new file systems table like this:

```
cat > /etc/fstab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/fstab

# file system  mount-point  type      options          dump  fsck
#                                     order

/dev/<xxx>     /             <fff>     defaults         1     1
/dev/<yyy>     swap          swap      pri=1             0     0

# End /etc/fstab
EOF
```

Replace `<xxx>`, `<yyy>`, and `<fff>` with the values appropriate for the system, for example, `sda2`, `sda5`, and `ext4`. For details on the six fields in this file, see **man 5 fstab**.

Filesystems with MS-DOS or Windows origin (i.e.: `vfat`, `ntfs`, `smbfs`, `cifs`, `iso9660`, `udf`) need the “`iocharset`” mount option in order for non-ASCII characters in file names to be interpreted properly. The value of this option should be the same as the character set of your locale, adjusted in such a way that the kernel understands it. This works if the relevant character set definition (found under File systems -> Native Language Support) has been compiled into the kernel or built as a module. The “`codepage`” option is also needed for `vfat` and `smbfs` filesystems. It should be set to the codepage number used under MS-DOS in your country. E.g., in order to mount USB flash drives, a `ru_RU.KOI8-R` user would need the following in the options portion of its mount line in `/etc/fstab`:

```
noauto,user,quiet,showexec,iocharset=koi8r,codepage=866
```

The corresponding options fragment for `ru_RU.UTF-8` users is:

```
noauto,user,quiet,showexec,iocharset=utf8,codepage=866
```



### Note

In the latter case, the kernel emits the following message:

```
FAT: utf8 is not a recommended IO charset for FAT filesystems,
      filesystem will be case sensitive!
```

This negative recommendation should be ignored, since all other values of the “`iocharset`” option result in wrong display of filenames in UTF-8 locales.

It is also possible to specify default codepage and iocharset values for some filesystems during kernel configuration. The relevant parameters are named “Default NLS Option” (`CONFIG_NLS_DEFAULT`), “Default Remote NLS Option” (`CONFIG_SMB_NLS_DEFAULT`), “Default codepage for FAT” (`CONFIG_FAT_DEFAULT_CODEPAGE`), and “Default iocharset for FAT” (`CONFIG_FAT_DEFAULT_IOCHARSET`). There is no way to specify these settings for the ntfs filesystem at kernel compilation time.

It is possible to make the ext3 filesystem reliable across power failures for some hard disk types. To do this, add the `barrier=1` mount option to the appropriate entry in `/etc/fstab`. To check if the disk drive supports this option, run `hdparm` on the applicable disk drive. For example, if:

```
hdparm -I /dev/sda | grep NCQ
```

returns non-empty output, the option is supported.

Note: Logical Volume Management (LVM) based partitions cannot use the `barrier` option.

## 8.3. Linux-3.13.3

The Linux package contains the Linux kernel.

**Approximate build time:** 3.0 - 49.0 SBU (typically about 6 SBU)

**Required disk space:** 700 - 6800 MB (typically about 800-900 MB)

### 8.3.1. Installation of the kernel

Building the kernel involves a few steps—configuration, compilation, and installation. Read the README file in the kernel source tree for alternative methods to the way this book configures the kernel.

Prepare for compilation by running the following command:

```
make mrproper
```

This ensures that the kernel tree is absolutely clean. The kernel team recommends that this command be issued prior to each kernel compilation. Do not rely on the source tree being clean after un-tarring.

Configure the kernel via a menu-driven interface. For general information on kernel configuration see <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/kernel-configuration.txt>. BLFS has some information regarding particular kernel configuration requirements of packages outside of LFS at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/longindex.html#kernel-config-index>. Additional information about configuring and building the kernel can be found at <http://www.kroah.com/lkn/>



#### Note

A good starting place for setting up the kernel configuration is to run **make defconfig**. This will set the base configuration to a good state that takes your current system architecture into account.

Be sure to enable or disable following features or the system might not work correctly or boot at all:

```
General setup --->
  [*] Control Group support
Processor type and features --->
  [*] Enable seccomp to safely compute untrusted bytecode
Networking support --->
  Networking options --->
    <*> The IPv6 protocol
Device Drivers --->
  Generic Driver Options --->
    () path to uevent helper
    [*] Maintain a devtmpfs filesystem to mount at /dev
    [ ] Fallback user-helper invocation for firmware loading
File systems --->
  [*] Inotify support for userspace
  <*> Kernel automounter version 4 support (also supports v3)
Pseudo filesystems --->
  [*] Tmpfs POSIX Access Control Lists
  [*] Tmpfs extended attributes
```



**Note**

While "The IPv6 Protocol" is not strictly required, it is highly recommended by the Systemd developers.

```
make LANG=<host_LANG_value> LC_ALL= menuconfig
```

The meaning of the make parameters:

```
LANG=<host_LANG_value> LC_ALL=
```

This establishes the locale setting to the one used on the host. This is needed for a proper menuconfig ncurses interface line drawing on UTF-8 linux text console.

Be sure to replace `<host_LANG_value>` by the value of the `$LANG` variable from your host. If not set, you could use instead the host's value of `$LC_ALL` or `$LC_CTYPE`.

Alternatively, **make oldconfig** may be more appropriate in some situations. See the README file for more information.

If desired, skip kernel configuration by copying the kernel config file, `.config`, from the host system (assuming it is available) to the unpacked `linux-3.13.3` directory. However, we do not recommend this option. It is often better to explore all the configuration menus and create the kernel configuration from scratch.

Compile the kernel image and modules:

```
make
```

If using kernel modules, module configuration in `/etc/modprobe.d` may be required. Information pertaining to modules and kernel configuration is located in Section 7.5, "Device and Module Handling on an LFS System" and in the kernel documentation in the `linux-3.13.3/Documentation` directory. Also, `modprobe.conf(5)` may be of interest.

Install the modules, if the kernel configuration uses them:

```
make modules_install
```

After kernel compilation is complete, additional steps are required to complete the installation. Some files need to be copied to the `/boot` directory.

The path to the kernel image may vary depending on the platform being used. The filename below can be changed to suit your taste, but the stem of the filename should be `vmlinuz` to be compatible with the automatic setup of the boot process described in the next section. The following command assumes an x86 architecture:

```
cp -v arch/x86/boot/bzImage /boot/vmlinuz-3.13.3-lfs-7.5-systemd-rc1
```

`System.map` is a symbol file for the kernel. It maps the function entry points of every function in the kernel API, as well as the addresses of the kernel data structures for the running kernel. It is used as a resource when investigating kernel problems. Issue the following command to install the map file:

```
cp -v System.map /boot/System.map-3.13.3
```

The kernel configuration file `.config` produced by the **make menuconfig** step above contains all the configuration selections for the kernel that was just compiled. It is a good idea to keep this file for future reference:

```
cp -v .config /boot/config-3.13.3
```

Install the documentation for the Linux kernel:

```
install -d /usr/share/doc/linux-3.13.3
cp -r Documentation/* /usr/share/doc/linux-3.13.3
```

It is important to note that the files in the kernel source directory are not owned by *root*. Whenever a package is unpacked as user *root* (like we did inside *chroot*), the files have the user and group IDs of whatever they were on the packager's computer. This is usually not a problem for any other package to be installed because the source tree is removed after the installation. However, the Linux source tree is often retained for a long time. Because of this, there is a chance that whatever user ID the packager used will be assigned to somebody on the machine. That person would then have write access to the kernel source.

If the kernel source tree is going to be retained, run **chown -R 0:0** on the `linux-3.13.3` directory to ensure all files are owned by user *root*.



### Warning

Some kernel documentation recommends creating a symlink from `/usr/src/linux` pointing to the kernel source directory. This is specific to kernels prior to the 2.6 series and *must not* be created on an LFS system as it can cause problems for packages you may wish to build once your base LFS system is complete.



### Warning

The headers in the system's `include` directory should *always* be the ones against which Glibc was compiled, that is, the sanitised headers from this Linux kernel tarball. Therefore, they should *never* be replaced by either the raw kernel headers or any other kernel sanitized headers.

## 8.3.2. Configuring Linux Module Load Order

Most of the time Linux modules are loaded automatically, but sometimes it needs some specific direction. The program that loads modules, **modprobe** or **insmod**, uses `/etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf` for this purpose. This file needs to be created so that if the USB drivers (`ehci_hcd`, `ohci_hcd` and `uhci_hcd`) have been built as modules, they will be loaded in the correct order; `ehci_hcd` needs to be loaded prior to `ohci_hcd` and `uhci_hcd` in order to avoid a warning being output at boot time.

Create a new file `/etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf` by running the following:

```
install -v -m755 -d /etc/modprobe.d
cat > /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf

install ohci_hcd /sbin/modprobe ehci_hcd ; /sbin/modprobe -i ohci_hcd ; true
install uhci_hcd /sbin/modprobe ehci_hcd ; /sbin/modprobe -i uhci_hcd ; true

# End /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf
EOF
```

## 8.3.3. Contents of Linux

**Installed files:** `config-3.13.3`, `vmlinuz-3.13.3-lfs-7.5-systemd-rc1`, and `System.map-3.13.3`  
**Installed directories:** `/lib/modules`, `/usr/share/doc/linux-3.13.3`

## Short Descriptions

<code>config-3.13.3</code>	Contains all the configuration selections for the kernel
<code>vmlinuz-3.13.3-lfs-7.5-systemd-rc1</code>	The engine of the Linux system. When turning on the computer, the kernel is the first part of the operating system that gets loaded. It detects and initializes all components of the computer's hardware, then makes these components available as a tree of files to the software and turns a single CPU into a multitasking machine capable of running scores of programs seemingly at the same time
<code>System.map-3.13.3</code>	A list of addresses and symbols; it maps the entry points and addresses of all the functions and data structures in the kernel

## 8.4. Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process

### 8.4.1. Introduction



#### Warning

Configuring GRUB incorrectly can render your system inoperable without an alternate boot device such as a CD-ROM. This section is not required to boot your LFS system. You may just want to modify your current boot loader, e.g. Grub-Legacy, GRUB2, or LILO.

Ensure that an emergency boot disk is ready to “rescue” the computer if the computer becomes unusable (un-bootable). If you do not already have a boot device, you can create one. In order for the procedure below to work, you need to jump ahead to BLFS and install **xorriso** from the *libisoburn* package.

```
cd /tmp &&
grub-mkrescue --output=grub-img.iso &&
xorriso -as cdrecord -v dev=/dev/cdrw blank=as_needed grub-img.iso
```

### 8.4.2. GRUB Naming Conventions

GRUB uses its own naming structure for drives and partitions in the form of  $(hdn,m)$ , where  $n$  is the hard drive number and  $m$  is the partition number. The hard drive number starts from zero, but the partition number starts from one for normal partitions and five for extended partitions. Note that this is different from earlier versions where both numbers started from zero. For example, partition `sda1` is  $(hd0,1)$  to GRUB and `sdb3` is  $(hd1,3)$ . In contrast to Linux, GRUB does not consider CD-ROM drives to be hard drives. For example, if using a CD on `hdb` and a second hard drive on `hdc`, that second hard drive would still be  $(hd1)$ .

### 8.4.3. Setting Up the Configuration

GRUB works by writing data to the first physical track of the hard disk. This area is not part of any file system. The programs there access GRUB modules in the boot partition. The default location is `/boot/grub/`.

The location of the boot partition is a choice of the user that affects the configuration. One recommendation is to have a separate small (suggested size is 100 MB) partition just for boot information. That way each build, whether LFS or some commercial distro, can access the same boot files and access can be made from any booted system. If you choose to do this, you will need to mount the separate partition, move all files in the current `/boot` directory (e.g. the linux kernel you just built in the previous section) to the new partition. You will then need to unmount the partition and remount it as `/boot`. If you do this, be sure to update `/etc/fstab`.

Using the current `lfs` partition will also work, but configuration for multiple systems is more difficult.

Using the above information, determine the appropriate designator for the root partition (or boot partition, if a separate one is used). For the following example, it is assumed that the root (or separate boot) partition is `sda2`.

Install the GRUB files into `/boot/grub` and set up the boot track:



#### Warning

The following command will overwrite the current boot loader. Do not run the command if this is not desired, for example, if using a third party boot manager to manage the Master Boot Record (MBR).

```
grub-install /dev/sda
```

## 8.4.4. Creating the Configuration File

Generate `/boot/grub/grub.cfg`:

```
cat > /boot/grub/grub.cfg << "EOF"
# Begin /boot/grub/grub.cfg
set default=0
set timeout=5

insmod ext2
set root=(hd0,2)

menuentry "GNU/Linux, Linux 3.13.3-lfs-7.5-systemd-rc1" {
    linux    /boot/vmlinuz-3.13.3-lfs-7.5-systemd-rc1 root=/dev/sda2 ro
}
EOF
```



### Note

From GRUB's perspective, the kernel files are relative to the partition used. If you used a separate `/boot` partition, remove `/boot` from the above `linux` line. You will also need to change the `set root` line to point to the boot partition.

GRUB is an extremely powerful program and it provides a tremendous number of options for booting from a wide variety of devices, operating systems, and partition types. There are also many options for customization such as graphical splash screens, playing sounds, mouse input, etc. The details of these options are beyond the scope of this introduction.



### Caution

There is a command, `grub-mkconfig`, that can write a configuration file automatically. It uses a set of scripts in `/etc/grub.d/` and will destroy any customizations that you make. These scripts are designed primarily for non-source distributions and are not recommended for LFS. If you install a commercial Linux distribution, there is a good chance that this program will be run. Be sure to back up your `grub.cfg` file.

## Chapter 9. The End

### 9.1. The End

Well done! The new LFS system is installed! We wish you much success with your shiny new custom-built Linux system.

Create an `/etc/os-release` file required by Systemd:

```
cat > /etc/os-release << "EOF"
NAME="Linux From Scratch"
VERSION="7.5-systemd-rc1"
ID=lfs
PRETTY_NAME="Linux From Scratch 7.5-systemd-rc1"
EOF
```

It is recommended to create `/etc/lfs-release` for compatibility with non Systemd branch. By having this file, it is very easy for you (and for us if you need to ask for help at some point) to find out which LFS version is installed on the system. Create this file by running:

```
echo 7.5-systemd-rc1 > /etc/lfs-release
```

It is also a good idea to create a file to show the status of your new system with respect to the Linux Standards Base (LSB). To create this file, run:

```
cat > /etc/lsb-release << "EOF"
DISTRIB_ID="Linux From Scratch"
DISTRIB_RELEASE="7.5-systemd-rc1"
DISTRIB_CODENAME="<your name here>"
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Linux From Scratch"
EOF
```

Be sure to put some sort of customization for the field 'DISTRIB\_CODENAME' to make the system uniquely yours.

### 9.2. Get Counted

Now that you have finished the book, do you want to be counted as an LFS user? Head over to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/cgi-bin/lfscounter.php> and register as an LFS user by entering your name and the first LFS version you have used.

Let's reboot into LFS now.

### 9.3. Rebooting the System

Now that all of the software has been installed, it is time to reboot your computer. However, you should be aware of a few things. The system you have created in this book is quite minimal, and most likely will not have the functionality you would need to be able to continue forward. By installing a few extra packages from the BLFS book while still in our current chroot environment, you can leave yourself in a much better position to continue on once you reboot into your new LFS installation. Here are some suggestions:

- A text mode browser such as *Lynx* will allow you to easily view the BLFS book in one virtual terminal, while building packages in another.

- The *GPM* package will allow you to perform copy/paste actions in your virtual terminals.
- If you are in a situation where static IP configuration does not meet your networking requirements, installing a package such as *dhcpcd* or the client portion of *dhcp* may be useful.
- Installing *sudo* may be useful for building packages as a non-root user and easily installing the resulting packages in your new system.
- If you want to access your new system from a remote system within a comfortable GUI environment, install *openssh* and it's prerequisite, *openssl*.
- To make fetching files over the internet easier, install *wget*.
- If one or more of your disk drives have a GUID partition table (GPT), either *gptfdisk* or *parted* will be useful.
- Finally, a review of the following configuration files is also appropriate at this point.
  - `/etc/bashrc`
  - `/etc/dircolors`
  - `/etc/fstab`
  - `/etc/hosts`
  - `/etc/inputrc`
  - `/etc/profile`
  - `/etc/resolv.conf`
  - `/etc/vimrc`
  - `/root/.bash_profile`
  - `/root/.bashrc`
  - `/etc/sysconfig/network`
  - `/etc/sysconfig/ifconfig.eth0`

Now that we have said that, lets move on to booting our shiny new LFS installation for the first time! First exit from the chroot environment:

```
logout
```

Then unmount the virtual file systems:

```
umount -v $LFS/dev/pts
umount -v $LFS/dev
umount -v $LFS/run
umount -v $LFS/proc
umount -v $LFS/sys
```

Unmount the LFS file system itself:

```
umount -v $LFS
```

If multiple partitions were created, unmount the other partitions before unmounting the main one, like this:

```
umount -v $LFS/usr
umount -v $LFS/home
umount -v $LFS
```

Now, reboot the system with:

```
shutdown -r now
```

Assuming the GRUB boot loader was set up as outlined earlier, the menu is set to boot *LFS 7.5-systemd-rc1* automatically.

When the reboot is complete, the LFS system is ready for use and more software may be added to suit your needs.

## 9.4. What Now?

Thank you for reading this LFS book. We hope that you have found this book helpful and have learned more about the system creation process.

Now that the LFS system is installed, you may be wondering “What next?” To answer that question, we have compiled a list of resources for you.

- Maintenance

Bugs and security notices are reported regularly for all software. Since an LFS system is compiled from source, it is up to you to keep abreast of such reports. There are several online resources that track such reports, some of which are shown below:

- Freecode (<http://freecode.com/>)

Freecode can notify you (via email) of new versions of packages installed on your system.

- CERT (Computer Emergency Response Team)

CERT has a mailing list that publishes security alerts concerning various operating systems and applications. Subscription information is available at <http://www.us-cert.gov/cas/signup.html>.

- Bugtraq

Bugtraq is a full-disclosure computer security mailing list. It publishes newly discovered security issues, and occasionally potential fixes for them. Subscription information is available at <http://www.securityfocus.com/archive>.

- Beyond Linux From Scratch

The Beyond Linux From Scratch book covers installation procedures for a wide range of software beyond the scope of the LFS Book. The BLFS project is located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/>.

- LFS Hints

The LFS Hints are a collection of educational documents submitted by volunteers in the LFS community. The hints are available at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/list.html>.

- Mailing lists

There are several LFS mailing lists you may subscribe to if you are in need of help, want to stay current with the latest developments, want to contribute to the project, and more. See Chapter 1 - Mailing Lists for more information.

- The Linux Documentation Project

The goal of The Linux Documentation Project (TLDP) is to collaborate on all of the issues of Linux documentation. The TLDP features a large collection of HOWTOs, guides, and man pages. It is located at <http://www.tldp.org/>.



## **Part IV. Appendices**

# Appendix A. Acronyms and Terms

<b>ABI</b>	Application Binary Interface
<b>ALFS</b>	Automated Linux From Scratch
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
<b>ASCII</b>	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
<b>BIOS</b>	Basic Input/Output System
<b>BLFS</b>	Beyond Linux From Scratch
<b>BSD</b>	Berkeley Software Distribution
<b>chroot</b>	change root
<b>CMOS</b>	Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor
<b>COS</b>	Class Of Service
<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Unit
<b>CRC</b>	Cyclic Redundancy Check
<b>CVS</b>	Concurrent Versions System
<b>DHCP</b>	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
<b>DNS</b>	Domain Name Service
<b>EGA</b>	Enhanced Graphics Adapter
<b>ELF</b>	Executable and Linkable Format
<b>EOF</b>	End of File
<b>EQN</b>	equation
<b>ext2</b>	second extended file system
<b>ext3</b>	third extended file system
<b>ext4</b>	fourth extended file system
<b>FAQ</b>	Frequently Asked Questions
<b>FHS</b>	Filesystem Hierarchy Standard
<b>FIFO</b>	First-In, First Out
<b>FQDN</b>	Fully Qualified Domain Name
<b>FTP</b>	File Transfer Protocol
<b>GB</b>	Gigabytes
<b>GCC</b>	GNU Compiler Collection
<b>GID</b>	Group Identifier
<b>GMT</b>	Greenwich Mean Time
<b>HTML</b>	Hypertext Markup Language
<b>IDE</b>	Integrated Drive Electronics
<b>IEEE</b>	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers

<b>IO</b>	Input/Output
<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol
<b>IPC</b>	Inter-Process Communication
<b>IRC</b>	Internet Relay Chat
<b>ISO</b>	International Organization for Standardization
<b>ISP</b>	Internet Service Provider
<b>KB</b>	Kilobytes
<b>LED</b>	Light Emitting Diode
<b>LFS</b>	Linux From Scratch
<b>LSB</b>	Linux Standard Base
<b>MB</b>	Megabytes
<b>MBR</b>	Master Boot Record
<b>MD5</b>	Message Digest 5
<b>NIC</b>	Network Interface Card
<b>NLS</b>	Native Language Support
<b>NNTP</b>	Network News Transport Protocol
<b>NPTL</b>	Native POSIX Threading Library
<b>OSS</b>	Open Sound System
<b>PCH</b>	Pre-Compiled Headers
<b>PCRE</b>	Perl Compatible Regular Expression
<b>PID</b>	Process Identifier
<b>PTY</b>	pseudo terminal
<b>QOS</b>	Quality Of Service
<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>RPC</b>	Remote Procedure Call
<b>RTC</b>	Real Time Clock
<b>SBU</b>	Standard Build Unit
<b>SCO</b>	The Santa Cruz Operation
<b>SHA1</b>	Secure-Hash Algorithm 1
<b>TLDP</b>	The Linux Documentation Project
<b>TFTP</b>	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
<b>TLS</b>	Thread-Local Storage
<b>UID</b>	User Identifier
<b>umask</b>	user file-creation mask
<b>USB</b>	Universal Serial Bus
<b>UTC</b>	Coordinated Universal Time

<b>UUID</b>	Universally Unique Identifier
<b>VC</b>	Virtual Console
<b>VGA</b>	Video Graphics Array
<b>VT</b>	Virtual Terminal

# Appendix B. Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions to the Linux From Scratch Project.

- *Gerard Beekmans* <gerard@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Creator, LFS Project Leader
- *Matthew Burgess* <matthew@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Project Leader, LFS Technical Writer/Editor
- *Bruce Dubbs* <bdubbs@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Release Manager, LFS Technical Writer/Editor
- *Jim Gifford* <jim@linuxfromscratch.org> – CLFS Project Co-Leader
- *Bryan Kadzban* <bryan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer
- *Randy McMurphy* <randy@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Project Leader, LFS Editor
- *DJ Lucas* <dj@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS and BLFS Editor
- *Ken Moffat* <ken@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS and CLFS Editor
- *Ryan Oliver* <ryan@linuxfromscratch.org> – CLFS Project Co-Leader
- Countless other people on the various LFS and BLFS mailing lists who helped make this book possible by giving their suggestions, testing the book, and submitting bug reports, instructions, and their experiences with installing various packages.

## Translators

- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <macana@macana-es.com> – Spanish LFS translation project
- *Johan Lenglet* <johan@linuxfromscratch.org> – French LFS translation project
- *Anderson Lizardo* <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Portuguese LFS translation project
- *Thomas Reitelbach* <tr@erdfunkstelle.de> – German LFS translation project

## Mirror Maintainers

### North American Mirrors

- *Scott Kveton* <scott@osuosl.org> – lfs.oregonstate.edu mirror
- *William Astle* <lost@l-w.net> – ca.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Eujon Sellers* <jpolen@rackspace.com> – lfs.introspeed.com mirror
- *Justin Knierim* <tim@idge.net> – lfs-matrix.net mirror

### South American Mirrors

- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – lfsmirror.lfs-es.info mirror
- *Luis Falcon* <Luis Falcon> – torredehanoi.org mirror

### European Mirrors

- *Guido Passet* <guido@primerelay.net> – nl.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Bastiaan Jacques* <baafie@planet.nl> – lfs.pagefault.net mirror
- *Sven Cranshoff* <sven.cranshoff@lineo.be> – lfs.lineo.be mirror

- Scarlet Belgium – lfs.scarlet.be mirror
- *Sebastian Faulborn* <info@aliensoft.org> – lfs.aliensoft.org mirror
- *Stuart Fox* <stuart@dontuse.ms> – lfs.dontuse.ms mirror
- *Ralf Uhlemann* <admin@realhost.de> – lfs.oss-mirror.org mirror
- *Antonin Sprinzl* <Antonin.Sprinzl@tuwien.ac.at> – at.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Fredrik Danerklint* <fredan-lfs@fredan.org> – se.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Franck* <franck@linuxpourtous.com> – lfs.linuxpourtous.com mirror
- *Philippe Baqué* <baque@cict.fr> – lfs.cict.fr mirror
- *Vitaly Chekasin* <gyouja@pilgrims.ru> – lfs.pilgrims.ru mirror
- *Benjamin Heil* <kontakt@wankoo.org> – lfs.wankoo.org mirror

## Asian Mirrors

- *Satit Phermawong* <satit@wbac.ac.th> – lfs.phayoune.org mirror
- *Shizunet Co.,Ltd.* <info@shizu-net.jp> – lfs.mirror.shizu-net.jp mirror
- *Init World* <<http://www.initworld.com/>> – lfs.initworld.com mirror

## Australian Mirrors

- *Jason Andrade* <jason@dstc.edu.au> – au.linuxfromscratch.org mirror

## Former Project Team Members

- *Christine Barczak* <theladyskye@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Book Editor
- *Archaic* <archaic@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer/Editor, HLFS Project Leader, BLFS Editor, Hints and Patches Project Maintainer
- *Nathan Coulson* <nathan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
- Timothy Bauscher
- Robert Briggs
- Ian Chilton
- *Jeroen Coumans* <jeroen@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Developer, FAQ Maintainer
- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS/BLFS/HLFS XML and XSL Maintainer
- Alex Groenewoud – LFS Technical Writer
- Marc Heerdink
- *Jeremy Huntwork* <jhuntwork@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, LFS LiveCD Maintainer
- Mark Hymers
- Seth W. Klein – FAQ maintainer
- *Nicholas Leippe* <nicholas@linuxfromscratch.org> – Wiki Maintainer
- *Anderson Lizardo* <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Backend-Scripts Maintainer
- *Dan Nicholson* <dnicholson@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS and BLFS Editor

- *Alexander E. Patrakov* <alexander@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, LFS Internationalization Editor, LFS Live CD Maintainer
- Simon Perreault
- *Scot Mc Pherson* <scot@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS NNTP Gateway Maintainer
- *Greg Schafer* <gschafer@zip.com.au> – LFS Technical Writer and Architect of the Next Generation 64-bit-enabling Build Method
- Jesse Tie-Ten-Quee – LFS Technical Writer
- *James Robertson* <jwrober@linuxfromscratch.org> – Bugzilla Maintainer
- *Tushar Teredesai* <tushar@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Book Editor, Hints and Patches Project Leader
- *Jeremy Utey* <jeremy@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, Bugzilla Maintainer, LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
- *Zack Winkles* <zwinkles@gmail.com> – LFS Technical Writer

## Appendix C. Dependencies

Every package built in LFS relies on one or more other packages in order to build and install properly. Some packages even participate in circular dependencies, that is, the first package depends on the second which in turn depends on the first. Because of these dependencies, the order in which packages are built in LFS is very important. The purpose of this page is to document the dependencies of each package built in LFS.

For each package we build, we have listed three, and sometimes four, types of dependencies. The first lists what other packages need to be available in order to compile and install the package in question. The second lists what packages, in addition to those on the first list, need to be available in order to run the test suites. The third list of dependencies are packages that require this package to be built and installed in its final location before they are built and installed. In most cases, this is because these packages will hardcode paths to binaries within their scripts. If not built in a certain order, this could result in paths of `/tools/bin/[binary]` being placed inside scripts installed to the final system. This is obviously not desirable.

The last list of dependencies are optional packages that are not addressed in LFS, but could be useful to the user. These packages may have additional mandatory or optional dependencies of their own. For these dependencies, the recommended practice is to install them after completion of the LFS book and then go back and rebuild the LFS package. In several cases, reinstallation is addressed in BLFS.

### acl

**Installation depends on:** Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, and Libtool  
**Must be installed before:** Systemd  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### attr

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, and Libtool  
**Must be installed before:** Systemd  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### Autoconf

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, GCC, and Libtool  
**Must be installed before:** Automake  
**Optional dependencies:** Emacs

### Automake

**Installation depends on:** Autoconf, Bash, Coreutils, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Binutils, Bison, Bzip2, DejaGNU, Diffutils, Expect, Findutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Gzip, Libtool, and Tar.  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None



## Bash

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Readline, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** Shadow
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** Xorg

## Bc

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Readline
- Test suite depends on:** Gawk
- Must be installed before:** Linux Kernel
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Binutils

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, File, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, Texinfo and Zlib
- Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU and Expect
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Bison

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed
- Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, Findutils, and Flex
- Must be installed before:** Kbd and Tar
- Optional dependencies:** Doxygen (test suite)

## Bzip2

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Patch
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Check

- Installation depends on:** GCC, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Coreutils

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, GMP, Grep, Make, Patch, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, E2fsprogs, Findutils, Shadow, and Util-linux
- Must be installed before:** Bash, Diffutils, Findutils, Man-DB, and Udev
- Optional dependencies:** Perl Expect and IO:Tty modules (for test suite)

## D-Bus

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Diffutils, Expat, GCC, Grep, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** D-Bus Glib Bindings, Python  
**Must be installed before:** Systemd  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## DejaGNU

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Grep, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:**  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Diffutils

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, Perl  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Expect

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Tcl  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## E2fsprogs

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, Make, Sed, Texinfo, and Util-linux  
**Test suite depends on:** Procps-ng,Psmisc  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## File

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Zlib  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Findutils

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU, Diffutils, and Expect  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Flex

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Bison (suppressed) and Gawk  
**Must be installed before:** IPRoute2, Kbd, and Man-DB  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Gawk

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed and, Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Gcc

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, GMP, Grep, M4, Make, MPC, MPFR, Patch, Perl, Sed, Tar, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU and Expect  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** *CLooG-PPL*, *GNAT* and *PPL*

## GDBM

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Grep, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Gettext

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, Perl, and Tcl  
**Must be installed before:** Automake  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Glibc

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Grep, Gzip, Linux API Headers, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** File  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## GMP

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Sed and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** MPFR, GCC  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Grep

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** Gawk
- Must be installed before:** Man-DB
- Optional dependencies:** Pcre, Xorg, and CUPS

## Groff

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- Must be installed before:** Man-DB and Perl
- Optional dependencies:** GPL Ghostscript

## GRUB

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, Texinfo, and Xz
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Gzip

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, Less
- Must be installed before:** Man-DB
- Optional dependencies:** None

## lana-Etc

- Installation depends on:** Coreutils, Gawk, and Make
- Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- Must be installed before:** Perl
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Inetutils

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Sed, Texinfo, and Zlib
- Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- Must be installed before:** Tar
- Optional dependencies:** None

## IProute2

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Bison, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Linux API Headers
- Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Kbd

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Bison, Check, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Gzip, Make, Patch, and Sed
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	No test suite available
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	None
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	None

## Kmod

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Gzip, Make, Sed, Xz-Utils, Zlib
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	No test suite available
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	Udev
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	None

## Less

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	No test suite available
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	Gzip
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	Pcre

## Libpipeline

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	Check
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	Man-DB
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	None

## Libtool

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	Findutils
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	None
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	None

## Linux Kernel

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Bc, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, Kmod, Make, Ncurses, Perl, and Sed
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	No test suite available
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	None
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	None

## M4

<b>Installation depends on:</b>	Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
<b>Test suite depends on:</b>	Diffutils
<b>Must be installed before:</b>	Autoconf and Bison
<b>Optional dependencies:</b>	libsigsegv

## Make

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Perl and Procps-ng  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Man-DB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bzip2, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, GDBM, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Groff, Gzip, Less, Libpipeline, Make, Sed, and Xz  
**Test suite depends on:** Util-linux  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Man-Pages

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, and Make  
**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## MPC

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, GMP, Make, MPFR, Sed and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** GCC  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## MPFR

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, GMP, Make, Sed and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** GCC  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Ncurses

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available  
**Must be installed before:** Bash, GRUB, Inetutils, Less, Procps-ng, Psmisc, Readline, Texinfo, Util-linux, and Vim  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Patch

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** Ed

## Perl

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, GDBM, Glibc, Grep, Groff, Make, Sed, and Zlib  
**Test suite depends on:** Iana-Etc and Procps-ng  
**Must be installed before:** Autoconf  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Pkg-config

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Popt, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** Kmod  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Popt

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils and Sed  
**Must be installed before:** Pkg-config  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Procps-ng

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Ncurses  
**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Psmisc

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Readline

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available  
**Must be installed before:** Bash  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Sed

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils and Gawk  
**Must be installed before:** E2fsprogs, File, Libtool, and Shadow  
**Optional dependencies:** Cracklib

## Shadow

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed
- Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- Must be installed before:** Coreutils
- Optional dependencies:** Acl, Attr, Cracklib, PAM

## Tar

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Inetutils, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- Test suite depends on:** Autoconf, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, and Gzip
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Tcl

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Texinfo

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, and Sed
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Util-linux

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, Udev, and Zlib
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** None

## Vim

- Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** None
- Optional dependencies:** Xorg, GTK+2, LessTif, Python, Tcl, Ruby, and GPM

## Xml::Parser

- Installation depends on:** Expat, Make, and Perl.
- Test suite depends on:** None
- Must be installed before:** Intltool
- Optional dependencies:** libwww-perl



## Xz

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make.  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** GRUB, Kmod, Man-DB, Udev  
**Optional dependencies:** None

## Zlib

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** File, Kmod, Perl, and Util-linux  
**Optional dependencies:** None

# Appendix D. LFS Licenses

This book is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 License.

Computer instructions may be extracted from the book under the MIT License.

## D.1. Creative Commons License

Creative Commons Legal Code

Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0



### Important

CREATIVE COMMONS CORPORATION IS NOT A LAW FIRM AND DOES NOT PROVIDE LEGAL SERVICES. DISTRIBUTION OF THIS LICENSE DOES NOT CREATE AN ATTORNEY-CLIENT RELATIONSHIP. CREATIVE COMMONS PROVIDES THIS INFORMATION ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS. CREATIVE COMMONS MAKES NO WARRANTIES REGARDING THE INFORMATION PROVIDED, AND DISCLAIMS LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ITS USE.

License

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CREATIVE COMMONS PUBLIC LICENSE ("CCPL" OR "LICENSE"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HERE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE LICENSOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HERE IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

### 1. Definitions

- a. "Collective Work" means a work, such as a periodical issue, anthology or encyclopedia, in which the Work in its entirety in unmodified form, along with a number of other contributions, constituting separate and independent works in themselves, are assembled into a collective whole. A work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work (as defined below) for the purposes of this License.
- b. "Derivative Work" means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works, such as a translation, musical arrangement, dramatization, fictionalization, motion picture version, sound recording, art reproduction, abridgment, condensation, or any other form in which the Work may be recast, transformed, or adapted, except that a work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition or sound recording, the synchronization of the Work in timed-relation with a moving image ("synching") will be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License.
- c. "Licensor" means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.
- d. "Original Author" means the individual or entity who created the Work.
- e. "Work" means the copyrightable work of authorship offered under the terms of this License.
- f. "You" means an individual or entity exercising rights under this License who has not previously violated the terms of this License with respect to the Work, or who has received express permission from the Licensor to exercise rights under this License despite a previous violation.

- g. "License Elements" means the following high-level license attributes as selected by Licensor and indicated in the title of this License: Attribution, Noncommercial, ShareAlike.
2. Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this license is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.
  3. License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, Licensor hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below:
    - a. to reproduce the Work, to incorporate the Work into one or more Collective Works, and to reproduce the Work as incorporated in the Collective Works;
    - b. to create and reproduce Derivative Works;
    - c. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission the Work including as incorporated in Collective Works;
    - d. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission Derivative Works;

The above rights may be exercised in all media and formats whether now known or hereafter devised. The above rights include the right to make such modifications as are technically necessary to exercise the rights in other media and formats. All rights not expressly granted by Licensor are hereby reserved, including but not limited to the rights set forth in Sections 4(e) and 4(f).

4. Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions:
  - a. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy or phonorecord of the Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License. If You create a Collective Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Collective Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested. If You create a Derivative Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Derivative Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested.
  - b. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work only under the terms of this License, a later version of this License with the same License Elements as this License, or a Creative Commons iCommons license that contains the same License Elements as this License (e.g. Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 Japan). You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License or other license specified in the previous sentence with every copy or phonorecord of each Derivative Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Derivative Works that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder, and You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Derivative Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner

inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Derivative Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Derivative Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License.

- c. You may not exercise any of the rights granted to You in Section 3 above in any manner that is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation. The exchange of the Work for other copyrighted works by means of digital file-sharing or otherwise shall not be considered to be intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation, provided there is no payment of any monetary compensation in connection with the exchange of copyrighted works.
- d. If you distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work or any Derivative Works or Collective Works, You must keep intact all copyright notices for the Work and give the Original Author credit reasonable to the medium or means You are utilizing by conveying the name (or pseudonym if applicable) of the Original Author if supplied; the title of the Work if supplied; to the extent reasonably practicable, the Uniform Resource Identifier, if any, that Licensor specifies to be associated with the Work, unless such URI does not refer to the copyright notice or licensing information for the Work; and in the case of a Derivative Work, a credit identifying the use of the Work in the Derivative Work (e.g., "French translation of the Work by Original Author," or "Screenplay based on original Work by Original Author"). Such credit may be implemented in any reasonable manner; provided, however, that in the case of a Derivative Work or Collective Work, at a minimum such credit will appear where any other comparable authorship credit appears and in a manner at least as prominent as such other comparable authorship credit.
- e. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition:
  - i. Performance Royalties Under Blanket Licenses. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance rights society (e.g. ASCAP, BMI, SESAC), royalties for the public performance or public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work if that performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.
  - ii. Mechanical Rights and Statutory Royalties. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a music rights agency or designated agent (e.g. Harry Fox Agency), royalties for any phonorecord You create from the Work ("cover version") and distribute, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 115 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your distribution of such cover version is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.
- f. Webcasting Rights and Statutory Royalties. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a sound recording, Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance-rights society (e.g. SoundExchange), royalties for the public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 114 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your public digital performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

## 5. Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer

UNLESS OTHERWISE MUTUALLY AGREED TO BY THE PARTIES IN WRITING, LICENSOR OFFERS THE WORK AS-IS AND MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE WORK, EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OF TITLE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT, OR THE ABSENCE OF LATENT OR OTHER DEFECTS, ACCURACY, OR THE PRESENCE OF ABSENCE OF ERRORS, WHETHER OR NOT DISCOVERABLE. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO SUCH EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. **Limitation on Liability.** EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL LICENSOR BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK, EVEN IF LICENSOR HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.
7. **Termination**
  - a. This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of the terms of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works or Collective Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, and 8 will survive any termination of this License.
  - b. Subject to the above terms and conditions, the license granted here is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, Licensor reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.
8. **Miscellaneous**
  - a. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform the Work or a Collective Work, the Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.
  - b. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work, Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the original Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.
  - c. If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this agreement, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.
  - d. No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.
  - e. This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed here. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified here. Licensor shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Licensor and You.



### Important

Creative Commons is not a party to this License, and makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work. Creative Commons will not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. Notwithstanding the foregoing two (2) sentences, if Creative Commons has expressly identified itself as the Licensor hereunder, it shall have all rights and obligations of Licensor.

Except for the limited purpose of indicating to the public that the Work is licensed under the CCPL, neither party will use the trademark "Creative Commons" or any related trademark or logo of Creative Commons without the prior written consent of Creative Commons. Any permitted use will be in compliance with Creative Commons' then-current trademark usage guidelines, as may be published on its website or otherwise made available upon request from time to time.

Creative Commons may be contacted at <http://creativecommons.org/>.

## D.2. The MIT License

Copyright © 1999-2014 Gerard Beekmans

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

# Index

## Packages

- Acl: 116
- Attr: 115
- Autoconf: 153
- Automake: 154
- Bash: 141
  - tools: 54
- Bash: 141
  - tools: 54
- Bc: 143
- Binutils: 97
  - tools, pass 1: 31
  - tools, pass 2: 42
- Binutils: 97
  - tools, pass 1: 31
  - tools, pass 2: 42
- Binutils: 97
  - tools, pass 1: 31
  - tools, pass 2: 42
- Bison: 137
- Bzip2: 109
  - tools: 55
- Bzip2: 109
  - tools: 55
- Check: 52
- Coreutils: 128
  - tools: 56
- Coreutils: 128
  - tools: 56
- D-Bus: 187
- DejaGNU: 51
- Diffutils: 156
  - tools: 57
- Diffutils: 156
  - tools: 57
- E2fsprogs: 125
- Expat: 146
- Expect: 49
- File: 96
  - tools: 58
- File: 96
  - tools: 58
- Findutils: 158
  - tools: 59
- Findutils: 158
  - tools: 59
- Flex: 135
- Gawk: 157
  - tools: 60
- Gawk: 157
  - tools: 60
- GCC: 103
  - tools, libstdc++: 40
  - tools, pass 1: 33
  - tools, pass 2: 44
- GCC: 103
  - tools, libstdc++: 40
  - tools, pass 1: 33
  - tools, pass 2: 44
- GCC: 103
  - tools, libstdc++: 40
  - tools, pass 1: 33
  - tools, pass 2: 44
- GCC: 103
  - tools, libstdc++: 40
  - tools, pass 1: 33
  - tools, pass 2: 44
- GCC: 103
  - tools, libstdc++: 40
  - tools, pass 1: 33
  - tools, pass 2: 44
- GDBM: 145
- Gettext: 159
  - tools: 61
- Gettext: 159
  - tools: 61
- Glibc: 86
  - tools: 37
- Glibc: 86
  - tools: 37
- GMP: 99
- Gperf: 162
- Grep: 138
  - tools: 62
- Grep: 138
  - tools: 62
- Groff: 163
- GRUB: 168
- Gzip: 171
  - tools: 63
- Gzip: 171
  - tools: 63
- Iana-Etc: 133
- Inetutils: 147
- Intltool: 161

IPRoute2: 173  
 Kbd: 175  
 Kmod: 177  
 Less: 170  
 Libcap: 118  
 Libdbus: 182  
 Libpipeline: 179  
 Libtool: 144  
 Linux: 221  
   API headers: 84  
   tools, API headers: 36  
 Linux: 221  
   API headers: 84  
   tools, API headers: 36  
 Linux: 221  
   API headers: 84  
   tools, API headers: 36  
 M4: 134  
   tools: 64  
 M4: 134  
   tools: 64  
 Make: 180  
   tools: 65  
 Make: 180  
   tools: 65  
 Man-DB: 194  
 Man-pages: 85  
 MPC: 102  
 MPFR: 101  
 Ncurses: 112  
   tools: 53  
 Ncurses: 112  
   tools: 53  
 Network-Scripts: 206  
 Patch: 181  
   tools: 66  
 Patch: 181  
   tools: 66  
 Perl: 149  
   tools: 67  
 Perl: 149  
   tools: 67  
 Pkgconfig: 111  
 Procps-ng: 123  
 Psmisc: 122  
 Readline: 139  
 Sed: 108

tools: 68  
 Sed: 108  
   tools: 68  
 Shadow: 119  
   configuring: 120  
 Shadow: 119  
   configuring: 120  
 Systemd: 183  
 Tar: 197  
   tools: 69  
 Tar: 197  
   tools: 69  
 Tcl: 47  
 Texinfo: 198  
   tools: 70  
 Texinfo: 198  
   tools: 70  
 Udev  
   usage: 209  
 Util-linux: 71, 189  
 Util-linux: 71, 189  
 Vim: 200  
 XML::Parser: 152  
 Xz: 166  
   tools: 72  
 Xz: 166  
   tools: 72  
 Zlib: 95

## Programs

a2p: 149, 150  
 accessdb: 194, 195  
 acinstall: 154, 154  
 aclocal: 154, 154  
 aclocal-1.14: 154, 154  
 addftinfo: 163, 163  
 addpart: 189, 190  
 addr2line: 97, 98  
 afmtodit: 163, 163  
 agetty: 189, 190  
 apropos: 194, 196  
 ar: 97, 98  
 as: 97, 98  
 attr: 115, 115  
 autoconf: 153, 153  
 autoheader: 153, 153  
 autom4te: 153, 153



automake: 154, 154  
 automake-1.14: 154, 154  
 autopoint: 159, 159  
 autoreconf: 153, 153  
 autoscan: 153, 153  
 autoupdate: 153, 153  
 awk: 157, 157  
 badblocks: 125, 126  
 base64: 128, 129  
 basename: 128, 129  
 bash: 141, 142  
 bashbug: 141, 142  
 bc: 143, 143  
 bigram: 158, 158  
 bison: 137, 137  
 blkdiscard: 189, 190  
 blkid: 189, 190  
 blockdev: 189, 190  
 bridge: 173, 173  
 bunzip2: 109, 110  
 bzip2: 109, 110  
 bzip2recover: 109, 110  
 bzless: 109, 110  
 bzip2: 109, 110  
 bzmore: 109, 110  
 c++: 103, 106  
 c++filt: 97, 98  
 c2ph: 149, 150  
 cal: 189, 190  
 capsh: 118, 118  
 captinfo: 112, 114  
 cat: 128, 129  
 catchsegv: 86, 91  
 catman: 194, 196  
 cc: 103, 106  
 cfdisk: 189, 190  
 chacl: 116, 116  
 chage: 119, 121  
 chattr: 125, 126  
 chcon: 128, 129  
 chcpu: 189, 190  
 checkmk: 52, 52  
 chem: 163, 163  
 chfn: 119, 121  
 chpasswd: 119, 121  
 chgrp: 128, 129  
 chmod: 128, 129  
 chown: 128, 129  
 chpasswd: 119, 121  
 chroot: 128, 129  
 chrt: 189, 190  
 chsh: 119, 121  
 chvt: 175, 176  
 cksum: 128, 129  
 clear: 112, 114  
 cmp: 156, 156  
 code: 158, 158  
 col: 189, 190  
 colcrt: 189, 190  
 colrm: 189, 190  
 column: 189, 190  
 comm: 128, 129  
 compile: 154, 154  
 compile\_et: 125, 126  
 config.charset: 159, 159  
 config.guess: 154, 154  
 config.rpath: 159, 159  
 config.sub: 154, 155  
 config\_data: 149, 150  
 corelist: 149, 150  
 cp: 128, 129  
 cpan: 149, 150  
 cpan2dist: 149, 150  
 cpanp: 149, 150  
 cpanp-run-perl: 149, 150  
 cpp: 103, 106  
 csplit: 128, 129  
 ctrlaltdel: 189, 190  
 ctstat: 173, 173  
 cut: 128, 130  
 cytune: 189, 190  
 date: 128, 130  
 dbus-cleanup-sockets: 187, 188  
 dbus-daemon: 187, 188  
 dbus-launch: 187, 188  
 dbus-monitor: 187, 188  
 dbus-send: 187, 188  
 dbus-uuidgen: 187, 188  
 dc: 143, 143

dd: 128, 130  
 dealloct: 175, 176  
 debugfs: 125, 126  
 delpart: 189, 190  
 depcomp: 154, 155  
 depmod: 177, 178  
 df: 128, 130  
 diff: 156, 156  
 diff3: 156, 156  
 dir: 128, 130  
 dircolors: 128, 130  
 dirname: 128, 130  
 dmesg: 189, 190  
 du: 128, 130  
 dumpe2fs: 125, 127  
 dumpkeys: 175, 176  
 e2freefrag: 125, 127  
 e2fsck: 125, 127  
 e2image: 125, 127  
 e2label: 125, 127  
 e2undo: 125, 127  
 e4defrag: 125, 127  
 echo: 128, 130  
 egrep: 138, 138  
 eject: 189, 190  
 elfedit: 97, 98  
 enc2xs: 149, 150  
 env: 128, 130  
 envsubst: 159, 159  
 eqn: 163, 163  
 eqn2graph: 163, 163  
 ex: 200, 202  
 expand: 128, 130  
 expect: 49, 50  
 expiry: 119, 121  
 expr: 128, 130  
 factor: 128, 130  
 faillog: 119, 121  
 fallocate: 189, 190  
 false: 128, 130  
 fdformat: 189, 190  
 fdisk: 189, 190  
 fgconsole: 175, 176  
 fgrep: 138, 138  
 file: 96, 96  
 filefrag: 125, 127  
 find: 158, 158  
 find2perl: 149, 150  
 findfs: 189, 190  
 findmnt: 189, 190  
 flex: 135, 135  
 flex++: 135, 136  
 flock: 189, 191  
 fmt: 128, 130  
 fold: 128, 130  
 frcode: 158, 158  
 free: 123, 123  
 fsck: 189, 191  
 fsck.cramfs: 189, 191  
 fsck.ext2: 125, 127  
 fsck.ext3: 125, 127  
 fsck.ext4: 125, 127  
 fsck.ext4dev: 125, 127  
 fsck.minix: 189, 191  
 fsfreeze: 189, 191  
 fstrim: 189, 191  
 ftp: 147, 148  
 fuser: 122, 122  
 g++: 103, 106  
 gawk: 157, 157  
 gawk-4.1.0: 157, 157  
 gcc: 103, 106  
 gc-ar: 103, 106  
 gc-nm: 103, 107  
 gc-ranlib: 103, 107  
 gcov: 103, 107  
 gdiffmk: 163, 163  
 gencat: 86, 91  
 genl: 173, 173  
 geqn: 163, 164  
 getcap: 118, 118  
 getconf: 86, 91  
 getent: 86, 91  
 getfacl: 116, 116  
 getfattr: 115, 115  
 getkeycodes: 175, 176  
 getopt: 189, 191  
 getpcaps: 118, 118  
 gettext: 159, 159  
 gettext.sh: 159, 159  
 gettextize: 159, 159  
 gpasswd: 119, 121  
 gperf: 162, 162  
 gprof: 97, 98

grap2graph: 163, 164  
 grep: 138, 138  
 grn: 163, 164  
 grodvi: 163, 164  
 groff: 163, 164  
 groffer: 163, 164  
 grog: 163, 164  
 grolbp: 163, 164  
 grolj4: 163, 164  
 groups: 163, 164  
 grotty: 163, 164  
 groupadd: 119, 121  
 groupdel: 119, 121  
 groupmems: 119, 121  
 groupmod: 119, 121  
 groups: 128, 130  
 grpck: 119, 121  
 grpconv: 119, 121  
 grpunconv: 119, 121  
 grub-bios-setup: 168, 168  
 grub-editenv: 168, 168  
 grub-fstest: 168, 168  
 grub-install: 168, 169  
 grub-kbdcomp: 168, 169  
 grub-menulst2cfg: 168, 169  
 grub-mkconfig: 168, 169  
 grub-mkimage: 168, 169  
 grub-mklayout: 168, 169  
 grub-mknetdir: 168, 169  
 grub-mkpasswd-pbkdf2: 168, 169  
 grub-mkrelpath: 168, 169  
 grub-mkrescue: 168, 169  
 grub-mkstandalone: 168, 169  
 grub-ofpathname: 168, 169  
 grub-probe: 168, 169  
 grub-reboot: 168, 169  
 grub-script-check: 168, 169  
 grub-set-default: 168, 169  
 grub-setup: 168, 169  
 gtbl: 163, 164  
 gunzip: 171, 171  
 gzexe: 171, 171  
 gzip: 171, 171  
 h2ph: 149, 150  
 h2xs: 149, 150  
 halt: 183, 184  
 head: 128, 130  
 hexdump: 189, 191  
 hostid: 128, 130  
 hostname: 147, 148  
 hostname: 159, 159  
 hostnamectl: 183, 185  
 hpftodit: 163, 164  
 hwclock: 189, 191  
 i386: 189, 191  
 iconv: 86, 91  
 iconvconfig: 86, 91  
 id: 128, 130  
 ifcfg: 173, 173  
 ifconfig: 147, 148  
 ifnames: 153, 153  
 ifstat: 173, 174  
 igawk: 157, 157  
 indxbib: 163, 164  
 info: 198, 199  
 infocmp: 112, 114  
 infokey: 198, 199  
 infotocap: 112, 114  
 init: 183, 185  
 insmod: 177, 178  
 install: 128, 130  
 install-info: 198, 199  
 install-sh: 154, 155  
 instmodsh: 149, 150  
 intltool-extract: 161, 161  
 intltool-merge: 161, 161  
 intltool-prepare: 161, 161  
 intltool-update: 161, 161  
 intltoolize: 161, 161  
 ionice: 189, 191  
 ip: 173, 174  
 ipcmk: 189, 191  
 ipcrm: 189, 191  
 ipcs: 189, 191  
 isosize: 189, 191  
 join: 128, 130  
 journalctl: 183, 185  
 json\_pp: 149, 150  
 kbdfinfo: 175, 176  
 kbdrate: 175, 176  
 kbd\_mode: 175, 176  
 kernel-install: 183, 185  
 kill: 189, 191  
 killall: 122, 122

kmod: 177, 178  
last: 189, 191  
lastb: 189, 191  
lastlog: 119, 121  
ld: 97, 98  
ld.bfd: 97, 98  
ldattach: 189, 191  
ldconfig: 86, 91  
ldd: 86, 91  
lddlibc4: 86, 91  
less: 170, 170  
lessecho: 170, 170  
lesskey: 170, 170  
lex: 135, 136  
lexgrog: 194, 196  
lfskernel-3.13.3: 221, 224  
libasan: 103, 107  
libnetcfg: 149, 150  
libtool: 144, 144  
libtoolize: 144, 144  
link: 128, 130  
linux32: 189, 191  
linux64: 189, 191  
lkbib: 163, 164  
ln: 128, 130  
lnstat: 173, 174  
loadkeys: 175, 176  
loadunimap: 175, 176  
locale: 86, 91  
localectl: 183, 185  
localedef: 86, 91  
locate: 158, 158  
logger: 189, 191  
login: 119, 121  
loginctl: 183, 185  
logname: 128, 130  
logoutd: 119, 121  
logsave: 125, 127  
look: 189, 191  
lookbib: 163, 164  
losetup: 189, 191  
ls: 128, 130  
lsattr: 125, 127  
lsblk: 189, 191  
lscpu: 189, 191  
lslocks: 189, 191  
lsmod: 177, 178  
lzcat: 166, 166  
lzcmp: 166, 166  
lzdiff: 166, 166  
lzegrep: 166, 166  
lzfgrep: 166, 166  
lzgrep: 166, 166  
lzless: 166, 166  
lzma: 166, 167  
lzmadec: 166, 167  
lzmainfo: 166, 167  
lzmore: 166, 167  
m4: 134, 134  
machinectl: 183, 185  
make: 180, 180  
makedb: 86, 91  
makeinfo: 198, 199  
man: 194, 196  
mandb: 194, 196  
manpath: 194, 196  
mapscrn: 175, 176  
mcookie: 189, 191  
md5sum: 128, 130  
mdate-sh: 154, 155  
mesg: 189, 191  
missing: 154, 155  
mkdir: 128, 130  
mke2fs: 125, 127  
mkfifo: 128, 130  
mkfs: 189, 191  
mkfs.bfs: 189, 191  
mkfs.cramfs: 189, 191  
mkfs.ext2: 125, 127  
mkfs.ext3: 125, 127  
mkfs.ext4: 125, 127  
mkfs.ext4dev: 125, 127  
mkfs.minix: 189, 191  
mkinstalldirs: 154, 155  
mklost+found: 125, 127  
mknod: 128, 130  
mkswap: 189, 191  
mktemp: 128, 130  
mk\_cmds: 125, 127  
mmroff: 163, 164  
modinfo: 177, 178  
modprobe: 177, 178  
more: 189, 192  
mount: 189, 192

mountpoint: 189, 192  
msgattrib: 159, 160  
msgcat: 159, 160  
msgcmp: 159, 160  
msgcomm: 159, 160  
msgconv: 159, 160  
msgen: 159, 160  
msgexec: 159, 160  
msgfilter: 159, 160  
msgfmt: 159, 160  
msggrep: 159, 160  
msginit: 159, 160  
msgmerge: 159, 160  
msgunfmt: 159, 160  
msguniq: 159, 160  
mtrace: 86, 91  
mv: 128, 130  
namei: 189, 192  
ncursesw5-config: 112, 114  
neqn: 163, 164  
newgrp: 119, 121  
newusers: 119, 121  
nggettext: 159, 160  
nice: 128, 130  
nl: 128, 131  
nm: 97, 98  
nohup: 128, 131  
nologin: 119, 121  
nproc: 128, 131  
nroff: 163, 164  
nscd: 86, 91  
nsenter: 189, 192  
nstat: 173, 174  
numfmt: 128, 131  
objcopy: 97, 98  
objdump: 97, 98  
od: 128, 131  
oldfind: 158, 158  
openvt: 175, 176  
partx: 189, 192  
passwd: 119, 121  
paste: 128, 131  
patch: 181, 181  
pathchk: 128, 131  
pcprofiledump: 86, 91  
pdfroff: 163, 164  
pdftexi2dvi: 198, 199  
peekfd: 122, 122  
perl: 149, 150  
perl5.18.2: 149, 150  
perlbug: 149, 150  
perldoc: 149, 150  
perlivp: 149, 150  
perlthanks: 149, 151  
pfbtops: 163, 164  
pg: 189, 192  
pgrep: 123, 124  
pic: 163, 164  
pic2graph: 163, 164  
piconv: 149, 151  
pidof: 123, 124  
ping: 147, 148  
ping6: 147, 148  
pinky: 128, 131  
pivot\_root: 189, 192  
pkg-config: 111, 111  
pkill: 123, 124  
pl2pm: 149, 151  
pldd: 86, 91  
pmap: 123, 124  
pod2html: 149, 151  
pod2latex: 149, 151  
pod2man: 149, 151  
pod2texi: 198, 199  
pod2text: 149, 151  
pod2usage: 149, 151  
podchecker: 149, 151  
podselect: 149, 151  
post-grohtml: 163, 164  
poweroff: 183, 185  
pr: 128, 131  
pre-grohtml: 163, 164  
preconv: 163, 164  
printenv: 128, 131  
printf: 128, 131  
prlimit: 189, 192  
prove: 149, 151  
prtstat: 122, 122  
ps: 123, 124  
psed: 149, 151  
psfaddtable: 175, 176  
psfgettable: 175, 176  
psfstriptime: 175, 176  
psfxtable: 175, 176

pstree: 122, 122  
pstree.x11: 122, 122  
pstruct: 149, 151  
ptar: 149, 151  
ptardiff: 149, 151  
ptargrep: 149, 151  
ptx: 128, 131  
pwck: 119, 121  
pwconv: 119, 121  
pwd: 128, 131  
pwdx: 123, 124  
pwunconv: 119, 121  
py-compile: 154, 155  
ranlib: 97, 98  
raw: 189, 192  
rcp: 147, 148  
readelf: 97, 98  
readlink: 128, 131  
readprofile: 189, 192  
realpath: 128, 131  
reboot: 183, 185  
recode-sr-latin: 159, 160  
refer: 163, 164  
rename: 189, 192  
renice: 189, 192  
reset: 112, 114  
resize2fs: 125, 127  
resizepart: 189, 192  
rev: 189, 192  
rexec: 147, 148  
rlogin: 147, 148  
rm: 128, 131  
rmdir: 128, 131  
rmmod: 177, 178  
rmt: 197, 197  
roff2dvi: 163, 164  
roff2html: 163, 165  
roff2pdf: 163, 165  
roff2ps: 163, 165  
roff2text: 163, 165  
roff2x: 163, 165  
routef: 173, 174  
routel: 173, 174  
rpcgen: 86, 91  
rsh: 147, 148  
rtacct: 173, 174  
rtcwake: 189, 192  
rtmon: 173, 174  
rtpr: 173, 174  
rtstat: 173, 174  
runcon: 128, 131  
runlevel: 183, 185  
runtest: 51, 51  
rview: 200, 202  
rvim: 200, 202  
s2p: 149, 151  
script: 189, 192  
scriptreplay: 189, 192  
sdiff: 156, 156  
sed: 108, 108  
seq: 128, 131  
setacl: 116, 116  
setarch: 189, 192  
setattr: 115, 115  
setfont: 175, 176  
setkeycodes: 175, 176  
setleds: 175, 176  
setmetamode: 175, 176  
setsid: 189, 192  
setterm: 189, 192  
sfdisk: 189, 192  
sg: 119, 121  
sh: 141, 142  
sha1sum: 128, 131  
sha224sum: 128, 131  
sha256sum: 128, 131  
sha384sum: 128, 131  
sha512sum: 128, 131  
shasum: 149, 151  
showconsolefont: 175, 176  
showkey: 175, 176  
shred: 128, 131  
shuf: 128, 131  
shutdown: 183, 185  
size: 97, 98  
slabtop: 123, 124  
sleep: 128, 131  
sln: 86, 91  
soelim: 163, 165  
sort: 128, 131  
sotruss: 86, 91  
splain: 149, 151  
split: 128, 131  
sprof: 86, 91

ss: 173, 174  
 stat: 128, 131  
 stdbuf: 128, 131  
 strings: 97, 98  
 strip: 97, 98  
 stty: 128, 131  
 su: 119, 121  
 sulogin: 189, 192  
 sum: 128, 131  
 swapon: 189, 192  
 swapoff: 189, 192  
 swapon: 189, 192  
 switch\_root: 189, 192  
 sync: 128, 131  
 sysctl: 123, 124  
 systemctl: 183, 185  
 systemd-analyze: 183, 185  
 systemd-ask-password: 183, 185  
 systemd-cat: 183, 185  
 systemd-cgls: 183, 185  
 systemd-cgtop: 183, 185  
 systemd-coredumpctl: 183, 185  
 systemd-delta: 183, 185  
 systemd-detect-virt: 183, 185  
 systemd-inhibit: 183, 185  
 systemd-machine-id-setup: 183, 185  
 systemd-notify: 183, 185  
 systemd-nspawn: 183, 185  
 systemd-run: 183, 185  
 systemd-tmpfiles: 183, 186  
 systemd-tty-ask-password-agent: 183, 186  
 tabs: 112, 114  
 tac: 128, 131  
 tail: 128, 132  
 tailf: 189, 192  
 talk: 147, 148  
 tar: 197, 197  
 taskset: 189, 192  
 tbl: 163, 165  
 tc: 173, 174  
 tclsh: 47, 48  
 tclsh8.6: 47, 48  
 tee: 128, 132  
 telinit: 183, 186  
 telnet: 147, 148  
 test: 128, 132  
 testgdbm: 145, 145  
 texi2dvi: 198, 199  
 texi2pdf: 198, 199  
 texi2any: 198, 199  
 texindex: 198, 199  
 tfmtodit: 163, 165  
 tftp: 147, 148  
 tic: 112, 114  
 timedatectl: 183, 186  
 timeout: 128, 132  
 tload: 123, 124  
 toe: 112, 114  
 top: 123, 124  
 touch: 128, 132  
 tput: 112, 114  
 tr: 128, 132  
 traceroute: 147, 148  
 troff: 163, 165  
 true: 128, 132  
 truncate: 128, 132  
 tset: 112, 114  
 tsort: 128, 132  
 tty: 128, 132  
 tune2fs: 125, 127  
 tzselect: 86, 91  
 udevadm: 183, 186  
 ul: 189, 192  
 umount: 189, 192  
 uname: 128, 132  
 uncompress: 171, 171  
 unexpand: 128, 132  
 unicode\_start: 175, 176  
 unicode\_stop: 175, 176  
 uniq: 128, 132  
 unlink: 128, 132  
 unlzma: 166, 167  
 unshare: 189, 192  
 unxz: 166, 167  
 updatedb: 158, 158  
 uptime: 123, 124  
 useradd: 119, 121  
 userdel: 119, 121  
 usermod: 119, 121  
 users: 128, 132  
 utmpdump: 189, 192  
 uuid: 189, 192  
 uuidgen: 189, 193  
 vdir: 128, 132

vi: 200, 202  
 view: 200, 202  
 vigr: 119, 121  
 vim: 200, 202  
 vimdiff: 200, 202  
 vimtutor: 200, 202  
 vipw: 119, 121  
 vmstat: 123, 124  
 w: 123, 124  
 wall: 189, 193  
 watch: 123, 124  
 wc: 128, 132  
 wdctl: 189, 193  
 whatis: 194, 196  
 whereis: 189, 193  
 who: 128, 132  
 whoami: 128, 132  
 wipefs: 189, 193  
 x86\_64: 189, 193  
 xargs: 158, 158  
 xgettext: 159, 160  
 xmlwf: 146, 146  
 xsubpp: 149, 151  
 xtrace: 86, 92  
 xxd: 200, 202  
 xz: 166, 167  
 xzcat: 166, 167  
 xzcmp: 166, 167  
 xzdec: 166, 167  
 xzdiff: 166, 167  
 xzegrep: 166, 167  
 xzfgrep: 166, 167  
 xzgrep: 166, 167  
 xzless: 166, 167  
 xzmore: 166, 167  
 yacc: 137, 137  
 yes: 128, 132  
 yllwrap: 154, 155  
 zcat: 171, 171  
 zcmp: 171, 171  
 zdiff: 171, 171  
 zdump: 86, 92  
 zegrep: 171, 171  
 zfgrep: 171, 171  
 zforce: 171, 171  
 zgrep: 171, 171  
 zic: 86, 92

zipdetails: 149, 151  
 zless: 171, 172  
 zmore: 171, 172  
 znew: 171, 172  
 zsoelim: 194, 196

## Libraries

Expat: 152, 152  
 ld.so: 86, 92  
 libacl.{so,a}: 116, 117  
 libanl: 86, 92  
 libasprintf: 159, 160  
 libattr.{so,a}: 115, 115  
 libbfd: 97, 98  
 libblkid: 189, 193  
 libBrokenLocale: 86, 92  
 libbz2\*: 109, 110  
 libc: 86, 92  
 libcap: 118, 118  
 libcheck: 52, 52  
 libcidn: 86, 92  
 libcom\_err: 125, 127  
 libcrypt: 86, 92  
 libcurses: 112, 114  
 libdbus: 182, 182, 187, 188  
 libdbus: 182, 182, 187, 188  
 libdl: 86, 92  
 libe2p: 125, 127  
 libexpat: 146, 146  
 libexpect-5.45: 49, 50  
 libext2fs: 125, 127  
 libfl.so: 135, 136  
 libform: 112, 114  
 libg: 86, 92  
 libgcc\*: 103, 107  
 libgcov: 103, 107  
 libgdbm: 145, 145  
 libgettextlib: 159, 160  
 libgettextpo: 159, 160  
 libgettextsrc: 159, 160  
 libgmp: 99, 100  
 libgmpxx: 99, 100  
 libgomp: 103, 107  
 libhistory: 139, 140  
 libiberty: 103, 107  
 libieee: 86, 92  
 libkmod: 177



libltdl: 144, 144  
 liblto\_plugin\*: 103, 107  
 liblzma\*: 166, 167  
 libm: 86, 92  
 libmagic: 96, 96  
 libman: 194, 196  
 libmandb: 194, 196  
 libmcheck: 86, 92  
 libmemusage: 86, 92  
 libmenu: 112, 114  
 libmount: 189, 193  
 libmpc: 102, 102  
 libmpfr: 101, 101  
 libmudflap\*: 103, 107  
 libncurses: 112, 114  
 libnsl: 86, 92  
 libnss: 86, 92  
 libopcodes: 97, 98  
 libpanel: 112, 114  
 libpcprofile: 86, 92  
 libpipeline: 179  
 libprocps: 123, 124  
 libpthread: 86, 92  
 libquadmath\*: 103, 107  
 libquota: 125, 127  
 libreadline: 139, 140  
 libresolv: 86, 92  
 librpcsvc: 86, 92  
 librt: 86, 92  
 libSegFault: 86, 92  
 libss: 125, 127  
 libssp\*: 103, 107  
 libstdbuf.so: 128, 132  
 libstdc++: 103, 107  
 libsupc++: 103, 107  
 libsystemd-daemon: 183, 186  
 libsystemd-id128: 183, 186  
 libsystemd-journal: 183, 186  
 libsystemd-login: 183, 186  
 libtcl8.6.so: 47, 48  
 libtclstub8.6.a: 47, 48  
 libthread\_db: 86, 92  
 libtsan: 103, 107  
 libudev: 183, 186  
 libutil: 86, 92  
 libuuid: 189, 193  
 liby.a: 137, 137

libz: 95, 95  
 preloadable\_libintl: 159, 160

## Scripts

clock  
   configuring: 213  
 console  
   configuring: 214  
 hostname  
   configuring: 213  
 ifdown: 206, 206  
 ifup: 206, 206  
 ipv4-static: 206, 206  
 localnet  
   /etc/hosts: 208  
 network  
   /etc/hosts: 208  
   configuring: 207  
 network  
   /etc/hosts: 208  
   configuring: 207

## Others

/boot/config-3.13.3: 221, 224  
 /boot/System.map-3.13.3: 221, 224  
 /dev/\*: 75  
 /etc/fstab: 219  
 /etc/group: 81  
 /etc/hosts: 208  
 /etc/inputrc: 217  
 /etc/ld.so.conf: 90  
 /etc/localtime: 88  
 /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf: 223  
 /etc/nsswitch.conf: 88  
 /etc/os-release: 227  
 /etc/passwd: 81  
 /etc/protocols: 133  
 /etc/resolv.conf: 208  
 /etc/services: 133  
 /etc/vimrc: 201  
 /usr/include/asm-generic/\*.h: 84, 84  
 /usr/include/asm/\*.h: 84, 84  
 /usr/include/drm/\*.h: 84, 84  
 /usr/include/linux/\*.h: 84, 84  
 /usr/include/mtd/\*.h: 84, 84  
 /usr/include/rdma/\*.h: 84, 84

/usr/include/scsi/\*.h: 84, 84  
/usr/include/sound/\*.h: 84, 84  
/usr/include/video/\*.h: 84, 84  
/usr/include/xen/\*.h: 84, 84  
/var/log/btmp: 81  
/var/log/lastlog: 81  
/var/log/wtmp: 81  
/var/run/utmp: 81  
/etc/locale.conf: 215  
man pages: 85, 85